

13-Week

# TEACHERS GUIDE

By Thomas and Nita Horn

Defender Publishing LLC

13-Week

# TEACHERS GUIDE

Outline for 13-week class based on the book by Thomas and Nita Horn, *FORBIDDEN GATES: How Genetics, Robotics, Artificial Intelligence, Synthetic Biology, Nanotechnology, And Human Enhancement Herald The Dawn Of Techno-Dimensional Spiritual Warfare*.

This guide is FREE and can be freely redistributed so long as no fees are required to obtain or to use it.

## How to use this guide:

1. Each student will need a copy of the book *FORBIDDEN GATES*. \*
2. The teacher will use this TEACHERS GUIDE to prepare each week's class.
3. The student should be provided a photocopy of the TEAR-OUT SHEET at the end of each lesson (provided in this guide on the last page of each lesson) prior to the following week's class.

\* Student copies of *FORBIDDEN GATES* are available below wholesale at [www.forbiddengate.com](http://www.forbiddengate.com)

## WHY A CLASS ON THIS SUBJECT?

While *Forbidden Gates: How Genetics, Robotics, Artificial Intelligence, Synthetic Biology, Nanotechnology, and Human Enhancement Herald the Dawn of Techno-Dimensional Spiritual Warfare* includes fresh insights for traditional, tried-and-true methods of overcoming darkness, it also unveils for the first time how breakthrough advances in science, technology, and philosophy—including cybernetics, bioengineering, nanotechnology, machine intelligence, synthetic biology, and transhumanism—will combine to create mind-boggling game-changes to everything we have ever known about spiritual warfare.

As a result, new modes of perception between things visible and invisible are expected to challenge the church in ways that are historically and theologically unprecedented. Without comprehending what is quickly approaching in related disciplines of research and development, vast numbers of believers could be paralyzed by the most fantastic—and most far-reaching—supernatural implications. The destiny of each individual—as well as the future of their families—will depend on knowledge of the new paradigm and their preparedness to face it head on.

This is the reason for this teachers guide. We encourage you to freely share this guide with other churches and groups and to encourage them to become acquainted with the unprecedented techno-spiritual challenges facing the Church and society this century.

# LESSON #1

## YOUR HIDDEN ENEMY

Have the study group read chapter one of FORBIDDEN GATES before the first class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSE:** Ephesians 6:11-13

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #1 is to establish the reality of evil supernaturalism and the role of the Church with regard to spiritual warfare.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

In the opening chapter of their book FORBIDDEN GATES, authors Tom and Nita Horn recite a story told them years ago by Dr. David Yonggi Cho. The story involved a “vision” of an agathodemon—an ancient spirit with the head of a man and body of a serpent—that Cho battled and overcame. Shortly after waking up from the dream, Cho found that the woman he had been praying for was healed and the miracle led to the community converting to Christianity. Today, Cho pastors the largest evangelical church in the world with nearly a million members. If you believe the vision was genuine and represented spiritual and material reality, it all started in a city delivered from demonic siege.

- 1. In the opening chapter of FORBIDDEN GATES, authors Tom and Nita Horn recite a story told them years ago by Dr. David Yonggi Cho. What did you make of this story? Was it real or was Cho delusional?**

### **TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Read question one and create an opening / casual conversation regarding Cho’s story and the reality of evil supernaturalism (demons).
- b) Point out key phrases under the subtitle “THEY’RE HERE” on page 32 where the authors state that demons interlope between spiritual and human personalities at 1) home; 2) church; 3) government; and 4) in society. Each of

these points could be discussed, i.e. “How do demons operate against the home?” “In or against the church?” “In Government” etc.

- c) On page 33, the authors briefly mention “the divine council.” If you are not familiar with this theology (which some connect to the origin of demons) and want to include it in this class, we recommend the study by Dr. Michael Heiser on his website here: [www.thedivinecouncil.com](http://www.thedivinecouncil.com)

**2. Read the first theory concerning the origin of demons called “Spirits of a Pre-Adamic Race”, which makes the assumption that life existed on earth before Genesis 1:2 (the “gap” theory). Do you believe ancient history and the geological record support this conclusion? What evidence do you have?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Point out that fossil evidence of the Jurassic period, etc., indicates that life of some kind existed on earth and pre-dated the first civilizations of Mesopotamia. Do such fossils (humanlike footprints in Texas riverbeds near dinosaur bones etc.) offer tangible proof of theory number two? If so, would it be necessary for God, in a re-creation of the earth, to explain what occurred before Genesis 1:2?
- b) Point out that those who believe theory number two claim that it explains the desire of demons to possess human bodies, i.e. “they were created to exist within a human-like form and are therefore uncomfortable ‘disembodied.’”
- c) Ask the class if theory two is actually an effort to reconcile the secular opinion of the fossil record with the religious idea that the earth is less than 7000 years old?
- d) Scholars like Gary Stearman believe Lucifer was a “reptilian” Watcher that watched over the reptilian earth species (dinosaurs) and that, when he fell, this is what led to the destruction of the dinosaurs. If this is true, does this explain both the Pre-Adamic origin of demons as well as the fossil record?

**3. The second theory for the origin of demons—“Otherworld Creatures”—suggests that earthly anomalies such as megaliths, pyramids, etc., indicate a “supernatural” intelligence visited the earth during antiquity. Some students of demonology characterize this evidence as “demonic intelligence.” What do you think of such conclusions?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) You might start this question by asking the class if they understand Einstein's theory of relativity ( $E=mc^2$ ). Explain that all matter is motion, i.e., electrons spinning at the speed of light squared around various combinations of protons and neutrons forming molecules of different density, and thus various forms of matter. Some molecular structures (poison gases, ultraviolet rays from the sun, etc.), are powerfully real yet invisible to the naked eye. It is therefore scientifically possible for invisible and intelligent creatures to exist.
- b) Those who believe theory number two claim that some UFO activity defies known laws of physics and is therefore super-natural in nature. In discussing this, the teacher may find the excerpted information below from Tom Horn's book, *THE GODS THAT WALK AMONG US* (available free at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)) helpful.

...There is some evidence that the 42 demons or "judges" of Osiris were in some way related to the prehistoric legend of the Watchers—the mysterious angelic beings who first appeared in the early cultures of the Middle East. The Egyptian people originally migrated from the biblical land of Shin'ar, which means the Land of the Watchers. The Egyptians called it Ta Neter—The Land of the Watchers "from which the gods came into Egypt." As mentioned in Chapter One, it's possible that a historical event occurred giving birth to the legend of the Watchers, and references to a race of "watcher/gods" which cohabited with women and sought to control the human race is attested to by numerous ancient texts. The Sumerian scribes referred to the watchers as Anunnaki, which, they said, "came from Nibiru" to judge/rule the inhabitants of the earth. Some have interpreted Nibiru as "a distant planet", but the actual translation is, "Those Who from Heaven to Earth Came." In the Bible references are made to the Anakim and to the Nephilm which also means those who came from Heaven to Earth. In the Book of the Dead there are prayers for deliverance from the Watchers (Tchatcha, the princes of Osiris), who came from Ta-Ur, the "Far Away Land," and in the Book of Jubilees—also known as the Apocalypse of Moses—the Watchers are compared to the "supernatural beings" mentioned in the sixth chapter of Genesis as having come down from heaven to cohabit with women—a union ultimately leading to the birth of the giants. The Apocryphal Book of Enoch also associates the creatures of Genesis 6 with the Watchers. We read:

And I Enoch was blessing the Lord of majesty and the King of the ages, and lo! the Watchers called me—Enoch the scribe—and said to me: 'Enoch, thou scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives: "Ye have wrought great destruction on the earth: And ye shall have no peace nor forgiveness of sin: and inasmuch as they delight themselves in their children, The murder of their beloved ones shall they see, and over the destruction of their children shall they lament,

and shall make supplication unto eternity, but mercy and peace shall ye not attain".'" (1 Enoch 10:3-8)

From the Dead Sea Scrolls we learn that only 200 of the larger group of powerful angels called "Watchers" departed from the higher Heavens and sinned. Thus Enoch referred to the Watchers in the High Heavens as separate from the ones depicted on earth. The fallen class of Watchers are considered by some to be the creatures referred to in the Book of Jude as the "angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation...[and are] reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day" (Jude 6). In either case it appears the early Egyptian scribes believed that leaders from among the fallen Watchers had become the underworld demons of Osiris whose "terrible knives" exacted judgment upon the Ka of the wicked....

#### **[later in the book]**

...I believe a portion of UFO activity is demonic. Increasingly, others agree with that opinion. Hal Lindsey states, "I have become thoroughly convinced that UFOs are real....I believe these beings are not only extraterrestrial but supernatural in origin. To be blunt, I think they are demons." In *Angels Dark and Light*, Gary Kinnaman says, "I am fairly convinced that....UFO sightings are the manifestations of angels of darkness. My main reason for thinking this is that UFO sightings have never, at least to my knowledge, led a person closer to God. In fact, most UFO experiences have just the opposite effect." And UFO celebrity and author of *Communion* (bestselling book about his alleged alien abduction), Whitley Streiber, describes UFO-nauts in terms of demonology. He writes, "There are worse things than death, I suspected. And I was beginning to get the distinct impression that one of them had taken an interest in me. So far the word demon had never been spoken among the scientists and doctors who were working with me. And why should it have been? We were beyond such things. We were a group of atheists and agnostics, far too sophisticated to be concerned with such archaic ideas as demons and angels." Associate professor of psychology Elizabeth L. Hillstrom points out that a growing number of academics support the conclusion that UFO-nauts are synonymous with historical demons. In her informative book, *Testing the Spirits*, she writes:

From a Christian perspective, Vallee's explanation of UFOs is the most striking because of its parallels with demonic activity. UFO investigators have noticed these similarities. Vallee himself, drawing from extrabiblical literature on demonic activities, establishes a number of parallels between UFO-nauts and demons....Pierre Guerin, a UFO researcher and a scientist associated with the French National Council for Scientific Research, is not so cautious: "The modern UFO-nauts and the demons of past days are probably identical." Veteran researcher John Keel, who wrote *UFOs: Operation Trojan Horse* and other books on the subject, comes to the same conclusion: "The UFO manifestations seem to be, by and large, merely minor variations of the age-old demonological phenomenon."

It's easy to believe that demons are involved with "flying saucers." Evil spirits can manipulate energy and matter, and the theological terms, "Transmogrification" and "Poltergeist" ("noisy ghost"), imply that spirits can make lights go off and on, doors bang, icons bleed, and saucers fly. But if a portion of "flying saucer" activity is demonic, what nefarious purpose is served by the stealthy nature of UFO phenomena? The answer is diabolical. UFO-ism seems to be aimed at preparing the earth for the coming of Antichrist, i.e., an extraterrestrial "visitation of the gods," and, more importantly, at changing our religious beliefs. This occurs in two ways: First, from a technological standpoint, UFO sightings challenge the claim of human superiority and dispute our unique role in the

universe. We are made to feel shallow, undeveloped, unenlightened. Second, from a religious point of view, extraterrestrials bring a message (as reported in hundreds of abduction cases) of easy universalism and New Age mysticism including dialogue of humans “on the verge of extraordinary telepathic and technological growth.” Benevolent E.T.s profess to watch over us and promise to appear at the appropriate time to assist in our next big evolutionary, spiritual, and technological step forward. To prepare us for their coming, popular movies, bestselling books, cultural trends, and religious ideas, focus the earths masses on “help from above,” and New Agers smile and explain “It’s okay, they’ve been here before” and “Don’t worry, ancient men simply described flying saucers in terms of demons, angels, and gods, because they didn’t understand what they were seeing.” In other words, New Agers believe that space vehicles manipulating laws of physics (suddenly appearing and disappearing, operating anti-gravitationally, etc) were assigned “god” or “angel” status by sincere but ignorant prophets, and that Ezekiel’s living creatures will return someday in wheels “in the middle of a wheel” providing explanations of our origin and solutions to our problems.

Such New Age claims of extraterrestrials visiting the earth in ancient times and interacting with men is biblically and historically true. Where Christians differ from New Agers is in the definition of who these creatures were and what they were doing. In the Interlinear Hebrew Bible we read:

The benei Elohim saw the daughters of Adam, that they were fit extensions. And they took wives for themselves from all those that they chose...The Nephelim were in the earth in those days, and even afterwards when the benei Elohim came in to the daughters of Adam, and they bore to them—they were Powerful Ones which existed from ancient times, the men of name. (Gen. 6:2,4)

As noted in the first two chapters of this book, the benei Elohim were “extraterrestrial” angelic creatures also known as “watchers,” “sons of God,” and “rephiam.” They visited the earth during antiquity and used the daughters of Adam as “fit extensions” or instruments through which they extended themselves into the physical world. They sought to corrupt the bloodline of Adam, to deceive the human race, and to prevent the birth of the Messiah. They represented themselves as “gods,” and their offspring, the Nephilim (“fallen ones”), attempted to exterminate the people of Yahweh. In what may be a prophecy of end-time UFOs, Isaiah connected the benei Elohim to “fiery flying seraph.” We read, “Do not rejoice O Philistia, all of you, for the rod of your striking is broken, because a viper (Antichrist) comes forth from the root of the snake (Satan) and his fruit is the fiery flying seraph” (Is. 14:29). The seraph (seraphim) were powerful angels known for their brilliance. If, as we suspect, some of the seraphim followed Lucifer in the fall, it could be that such “fiery flying seraph” are the source of UFOs today. If true, the following questions arise: If alien “angels” appeared in the days before the flood performing genetic experiments on the daughters of Adam and producing the mutant nephilim, does the prophecy of Jesus in Luke 17:26 indicate such activity would reoccur in the End Times? Does recent UFO abduction activity point to genetic engineering of a new race of anti-God warriors (nephilim) as we approach the Great Tribulation? Will “UFOs” provide the grand entry of the ultimate cross-mutation of angelic and human species—the god-king of the New World Order? Time will tell. Until then, “the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth will let, until he be taken out of the way. And then shall that wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming: Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders” [ufo’s?] [emphasis added] (2 Thess. 2:7-9).



c) The teacher may wish to point out whereas “aliens” might not offer a good explanation for the origin of demons, some activity ascribed to “aliens” appears to be demonic. In other words, demons may be pretending to be advanced life forms.

**4. Theory number three for the origin of demons—“Offspring of Angels and Women”—interprets Genesis 6:4 as a historical account of women breeding with fallen angels resulting in demonic offspring. Do you believe Matthew 22:30 disputes this possibility?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) After discussing whether Mt 22:30 contradicts the idea of fallen angels mating with women and having offspring (most scholars explain that Mt 22 is talking about unfallen angels whereas the Watchers “kept not their estate”, fell, and mated with women) point out how in this book as well as Tom Horn’s Apollyon Rising 2012, the authors use extra biblical texts such as the book of 1 Enoch to rehearse the ancient idea that giants were born of an unholy union between women and angels. Have the class discuss whether they believe the ancient story in the book of Enoch is accurate, and why.
- b) Is it okay to use historical books (such as 1 Enoch) so long as they complement and do not contradict the authority of the Bible?
- c) Does this theory (demons are the offspring of women and angels) offer a worthy explanation as to “why” the angels of 2 Pet. 2:4 and Jude 6 were judged?

**5. Theory number four pertaining to the origin of demons—“Spirits of Wicked Men Deceased”—is based on the popular idea that good humans become angels and evil humans become demons at death. In what ways does our culture support this notion? Do we tell our children that loved ones (mommy, siblings, etc.) become angels at death? Daddy, who passed on, is watching over us?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Read question number five above and encourage the class to discuss the ways our culture promotes the idea that people we love (good people) become angels at death. Why then do we reject the notion that evil people become “demons?”
- b) Point out areas where violent or evil activity has historically occurred and that at times has been perceived as “haunted” by malevolent spirits of the deceased wicked people. Point out famous locations (Amityville; The Alamo; Hudson Valley; Salem’s Pickering Wharf; Mt. Nebo; LaPorte Indiana; Stepp Cemetery; Lemp Mansion; etc.) considered to be “haunted.” Do television shows like “Ghost Hunters” convey reality about this or are they playing with demons of another kind?
- c) Supporters of theory four also point to the twenty-eighth chapter of 1 Samuel as supporting their theory. They claim it makes the argument: “If the good spirit of Samuel could bridge the dimension between this world and the next—and somehow ‘communicate’ or interact with Saul—perhaps the evil spirits of deceased evil men can do the same.’ They also note how Philo, Josephus, and other early church leaders held this view.

**6. Theory number five on the origin of demons—“Demons Are Fallen Angels”—is widely accepted among Christians as the most likely and accurate explanation of the origin of demons. Do you believe it? Why?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Have three separate members of the class read the following verses: Ezekiel 28: 13-19; Isaiah 14:12-14; and Revelation 12:7-9. Allow the class to discuss each verse.
- b) Read Revelation 12:4 and ask the class what is meant by the symbolism. Refer to other verses that describe angels in terms of “stars” (“morning stars sang together” etc.) and ask the class if this means that one-third of the angels followed Lucifer in the fall? If so, does this mean that: (1) two thirds of the angels are still on our side; (2) God can create more if needed; and (3) the fallen angels lost power during the fall and are therefore individually less powerful than the individual members of the hosts of heaven?
- c) Ask the class, “What was Lucifer’s ambition, which led to his fall? What motivated the other angels to follow him?”

7. **Theory number six on the origin of demons—“Several of the Theories Above”—is interesting in that it says it is a mistake to select only one theory for the origin of evil supernaturalism. Have you thought of this before, and do you think it has merit?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Read (or have somebody read) Ephesians 6:12 and ask if this describes a hierarchy or military rank among the powers of darkness.
- b) If so, which of the theories of demons would they include in the list and how would they place each in rank from the most powerful to the least (for example: #1. Fallen Angels, #2. Spirits of Nephilim, etc...)
- c) Would they also place different assignments to these dispositions? In other words, are there among these malevolent beings those who never contact mankind and those that do? Are there some that only work within government, others that target the church etc.?

8. **Theory number seven concerning the origin of demons—“None of the Above”—denies the literal existence of personal demons, labeling them as superstitious designations. Do you completely agree, partially agree, or disagree altogether?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) On this theory you may wish to point out that it (the theory) doesn't mean liberal theologians necessarily neglect “exorcism” or deliverance ministries, but that, at the macro level, they believe “demons” are the powerful mental impressions of the subconscious mind and therefore “exorcism” is a psychological procedure applied to a mental disorder, the need to expunge the forceful autosuggestions of one's belief system while allowing the patient to believe whatever they want.
- b) If any in the class agree with this theory, ask them in a friendly manner how they explain “evil” in the world.

- c) Conclude today's study on a positive note, pointing out that "there are more angels for us than against us, and the ones on our side are more powerful!"

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK ONE

(Read chapter one of *Forbidden Gates* and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. In the opening chapter of FORBIDDEN GATES, authors Tom and Nita Horn recite a story told them years ago by Dr. David Yonggi Cho. What did you make of this story? Was it real or was Cho delusional?
2. Read the first theory concerning the origin of demons called “Spirits of a Pre-Adamic Race,” which makes the assumption that life existed on earth before Genesis 1:2 (the “gap” theory). Do you believe ancient history and the geological record support this conclusion? What evidence do you have?
3. The second theory for the origin of demons—Otherworld Creatures—suggests that earthly anomalies such as megaliths, pyramids, etc., indicate a “supernatural” intelligence visited the earth during antiquity. Some students of demonology characterize this evidence as “demonic intelligence.” What do you think of such conclusions?
4. Theory number three for the origin of demons—Offspring of Angels and Women—interprets Genesis 6:4 as a historical account of women breeding with fallen angels and resulting in demonic offspring. Do you believe Matthew 22:30 disputes this possibility?
5. Theory number four pertaining to the origin of demons—Spirits of Wicked Men Deceased—is based on the popular idea that good humans become angels and evil humans become demons at death. In what ways does our culture support this notion? Do we tell our children that loved ones (mommy, siblings, etc.) become angels at death? Daddy is watching over us?
6. Theory number five on the origin of demons—Demons Are Fallen Angels—is widely accepted among Christians as the most likely and accurate explanation of the origin of demons. Do you believe it? Why?
7. The sixth theory regarding the origin of demons—Several of the Theories Above—is interesting in that it says it is a mistake to select only one theory for the origin of evil supernaturalism. Have you thought of this before, and do you think it has merit?
8. Theory number seven concerning the origin of demons—None of the Above—denies the literal existence of personal demons, labeling them as superstitious designations. Do you completely agree, partially agree, or disagree altogether?

# LESSON #2

## OPEN SESAME!

Have the study group read chapter two of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSE:** Matthew 16:18-19

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #2 is to establish the idea that spirits can be bound and loosed, invited and disinvented by human activity.

**OPENING THOUGHT:**

In the first few paragraphs of chapter two from FORBIDDEN GATES, the story is told of famed occultist Aleister Crowley attempting to open a portal between the material and spiritual world. Following him, two of his disciples—Jack Parsons (founder of Jet Propulsion Laboratory) and L. Ron Hubbard (Church of Scientology founder) attempted to reopen the portal in order to bring through a gibborim or demon child, the whore of Babalon (sic or magical variation of *Babylon*). All three men claimed success in their attempts to make contact with the spirit world. The rituals and claims beg the question: Did something truly supernatural actually happen or were the men lying to bolster their reputations as magicians.

- 1. Whether you believe the claims made by Crowley, Parsons and Hubbard (referred to in the first few paragraphs of Forbidden Gates, Chapter Two) are true, would you say the following concept is accurate: *that spirits go where they are invited?***

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Before discussing the concept “spirits go where they are invited” the teacher may wish to begin this class by providing a bit of background information on Crowley, Parsons and Hubbard. If the teacher does not have access to the internet or other resources for this information, the brief material below on each man from Wikipedia may be helpful:

## **Aleister Crowley**

### **From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia**

Aleister Crowley (pronounced /'kroʊli/; 12 October 1875 – 1 December 1947), born Edward Alexander Crowley, and also known as both Frater Perdurabo and The Great Beast, was an influential English occultist, mystic and ceremonial magician, responsible for founding the religious philosophy of Thelema. Through this belief he came to see himself as the prophet who was entrusted with informing humanity that it was entering the new Aeon of Horus in 1904, a time when old ethical and religious systems would be replaced. Widely seen as one of the most influential occultists of all time, he was a member of the esoteric Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn, as well as a co-founder of the A∴A∴ and eventually a leader of Ordo Templi Orientis (O.T.O.). He is known today for his magical writings, especially *The Book of the Law*, the central sacred text of Thelema, although he also wrote widely on other subjects, including a large amount of fiction and poetry.

Crowley was also a hedonist, bisexual, recreational drug experimenter and social critic. In many of these roles he "was in revolt against the moral and religious values of his time", espousing a form of libertinism based upon the rule of "Do What Thou Wilt". Because of this, he gained widespread notoriety during his lifetime, and was denounced in the popular press of the day as "the wickedest man in the world." Alongside his esoteric activities, it has also been alleged that he was a spy for the British government.

Crowley has remained an influential figure right up till this day, and in 2002, a BBC poll described him as being the seventy-third greatest Briton of all time.

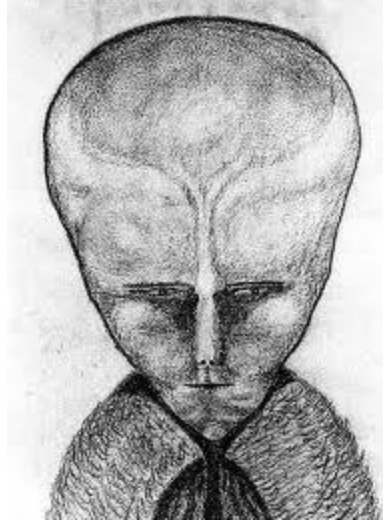


IMAGE OF "LAM" DRAWN BY ALEISTER CROWLEY, AS REFERRED TO IN FORBIDDEN GATES, CHAPTER TWO

### **Jack Parsons**

John Whiteside Parsons (born Marvel Whiteside Parsons on October 2, 1914 – died June 17, 1952) was an American rocket propulsion researcher at the California Institute of Technology. He was one of the principal founders of the Jet Propulsion Laboratory and the Aerojet Corp. As an enthusiastic occultist and Thelemite he was one of the first Americans to take a keen interest in the writings of English author and Thelema's founder Aleister Crowley. In this capacity, he belonged to an American lodge of Crowley's magical order, Ordo Templi Orientis (O.T.O.).

### **L. Ron Hubbard**

Lafayette Ronald "L. Ron" Hubbard (March 13, 1911 – January 24, 1986) was an American science fiction author who developed a self-help system called Dianetics which was first published in 1950. Over the following three decades Hubbard developed his self-help ideas into a wide-ranging set of doctrines and rituals as part of a new religion he called Scientology. Hubbard's writings became the guiding texts for the Church of Scientology and a number of affiliated organizations that address such diverse topics as business administration, literacy and drug rehabilitation. Hubbard was a controversial public figure, and many details of his life are still disputed. Official Scientology biographies present him as a "larger-than-life" figure whose career is studied



with admirable accomplishments in an astonishing array of fields.[5] Many of these claims are disputed by former Scientologists and researchers not connected with Scientology, who have written accounts that are sharply critical of Hubbard.

**[CONCERNING THE RELIGION OF SCIENTOLOGY AND ITS CONNECTION TO ANCIENT ALIEN SPIRITS, WIKIPEDIA INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING]**

Xenu (pronounced /'zi:nu:/, also Xemu, was, according to the founder of Scientology and science fiction writer L. Ron Hubbard, the dictator of the "Galactic Confederacy" who, 75 million years ago, brought billions of his people to Earth in a DC-8-like spacecraft, stacked them around volcanoes and killed them using hydrogen bombs. Official Scientology dogma holds that the essences of these many people remained, and that they form around people in modern times, causing them spiritual harm. Members of the Church of Scientology widely deny or try to hide the Xenu story.

These events are known within Scientology as "Incident II", and the traumatic memories associated with them as The Wall of Fire or the R6 implant. The story of Xenu is part of Scientologist teachings about extraterrestrial civilizations and alien interventions in Earthly events, collectively described as space opera by Hubbard. Hubbard detailed the story in Operating Thetan level III (OT III) in 1967, warning that the R6 "implant" (past trauma) was "calculated to kill (by pneumonia etc) [sic] anyone who attempts to solve it".

The Xenu story is part of the Church of Scientology's secret "Advanced Technology", normally only revealed to members who have already contributed large amounts of money. The church avoids mention of Xenu in public statements and has gone to considerable effort to maintain the story's confidentiality, including legal action on the grounds of both copyright and trade secrecy. Despite this, much material on Xenu has leaked to the public via court documents, copies of Hubbard's notes, and the Internet.

Famous Scientologists today include Tom Cruise, John Travolta, Kirstie Alley, Lisa Marie Presley and hundreds of other celebrities.

- b) Ask the class what they make of the fact that each of these men was interested in space travel as well as making contact with "alien" spirits. Is there a connection between UFOs and demons? What evidence suggests there could be?
- c) Besides outright occultism, is there such a thing as having an "unhealthy fascination" with things like UFOs, Ghost Hunting, the Paranormal that can lead

Christians down a dangerous path to opening doorways or inviting contact with invisible entities in their homes, their minds, their children's lives etc?

- 2. On pages 34-36 of Forbidden Gates, Tom and Nita Horn describe how amulets or talismans as magical items have been historically used to open and close (bind and loose) supernatural gateways. Does the use of such amulets (statues, candles, pendants, rings, etc) actually work? Is the use of such by certain Christian sects a good or dangerous idea?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may find the following Wikipedia entry helpful on this question: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Amulet>
- b) Discuss how placing faith in anything other than salvation and protection by Jesus Christ alone can lead to idolatry and mysticism.
- c) Ask the class to discuss whether "items" such as statues can become magnets of diabolical forces as a result of being the subject of our fascination or fixation. If we place faith in a particular item – even when perceived as a utility of Christian protection – are we in danger of inviting evil supernaturalism to energize the item through our misplaced faith? The following excerpt from Tom Horn's book "Apollyon Rising 2012" may be helpful here:

*Acknowledgment to such pagan gods through the use of images and symbols by Masons is interesting, given their avowed consecration of the Bible, a book that clearly forbids this type activity as devotion to demons. Acts 7:41–42 explains that when men serve idols, they are worshipping the host or "army" of heaven. Psalms 96:5 adds, "For all the gods of the nations are idols" ("elilim," LXX "daimonia" [demons]). Other references conclude that idols of stone or relevant imagery... are elilim ("empty," "nothing," "vanity"); but that behind these images exist the true dynamic of idolatry—demons. The apostle Paul confirmed this in 1 Corinthians 10:20, saying, "The things which the Gentiles sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils, and not to God: and I would not that ye should have fellowship with devils" (Apollyon Rising 2012, Defender Publishing, pg 115)*

3. In what way would you define the most appropriate Christian method of binding or loosening supernaturalism? Can one actually “bind” demons, and if so, in what way and when should this occur? How does one “loose” the power of God in their lives?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) On page 37 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors claim that Jesus actually tied the work of the ministry to “binding” and “loosing” supernatural agents. Discuss this with the class and ask them how this is true; i.e. in what way does taking authority over spiritual entities enable the work of the ministry. This could include “deliverance” ministry within the church for individuals as well as breaking down geographical strongholds through prayer. (Download the free book “Spiritual Warfare” from [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com) for information and examples of this phenomenon).
- b) Ask the class if the preaching of the gospel and people’s willingness to receive the transforming work of the Word of God can be hindered or empowered by “binding” the influences of lying spirits in a church, community, or even in media such as Christian television and radio.
- c) As a teacher, do you open each class with a prayer that the Word will find fruitful ground in the listener’s minds? Is this a form of spiritual warfare even when not perceived as such?

4. On pages 38-43 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors provide background on certain goddesses and rituals. Did such beliefs actually represent the manifestation of evil supernaturalism – literal spiritual forces against which the Church was opposed – or were these beliefs simply harmless mythology?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) On this question, the teacher may benefit from the following information excerpted from Tom Horn’s book *Apollyon Rising 2012* (pages 149-155):

The biblical view of the origin of the pagan gods begins with what in my second book [*The Gods Who Walk Among Us*, available as a free pdf download at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)] I coined “the original revelation.” This means there was a perfect revelation from God to man at the time of

creation. The first man, Adam, was at one with God, and perceived divine knowledge from the mind of God. The human was “in tune” with the mental processes of God, and understood, therefore, what God knew about science, astronomy, cosmogony, geology, eschatology, and so on. After the fall of man, Adam was “detached” from the mind of God, but retained an imperfect memory of the divine revelation, including knowledge of God’s plan of redemption from the time of the Fall through the end of time and everything in between, including Noah’s Flood, the coming of Messiah, and the final world empire. Two things began to occur in the decades after the Fall: 1) Information from the original revelation became distant and distorted as it was dispersed among the nations and passed from generation to generation; and 2) The realm of Satan seized upon this opportunity to receive worship, and to turn people away from Yahweh, by distorting and counterfeiting the original revelation with pagan ideas and “gods.” This point of view seems reasonable when one considers that the earliest historical and archeological records from civilizations around the world consistently point back to and repeat portions of the original story.

In their startling book, *The Discovery of Genesis*, Rev. C. H. Kang and Dr. Ethel R. Nelson confirm that prehistoric Chinese ideographic pictures (used in very ancient Chinese writing) report the story of Genesis, including the creation of the man and woman, the Garden, the temptation and fall, Noah’s Flood, and the Tower of Babel. In his book, *The Real Meaning of the Zodiac*, the late Dr. James Kennedy claimed that the ancient signs of the zodiac also indicate a singular and original revelation—a kind of gospel in the stars—and that the message of the stars, though demonized and converted into astrology after the fall of man, originally recorded the gospel of God. He wrote:

There exists in the writings of virtually all civilized nations a description of the major stars in the heavens—something which might be called their “Constellations of the Zodiac” or the “Signs of the Zodiac,” of which there are twelve. If you go back in time to Rome, or beyond that to Greece, or before that to Egypt, Persia, Assyria, or Babylonia—regardless of how far back you go, there is a remarkable phenomenon: Nearly all nations had the same twelve signs, representing the same twelve things, placed in the same order.... The book of Job, which is thought by many to be the oldest book of the Bible, goes back to approximately 2150 B.C., which is 650 years before Moses came upon the scene to write the Pentateuch;

over 1,100 years before Homer wrote the *Odyssey* and the *Illiad*; and 1,500 years before Thales, the first of the philosophers, was born. In chapter 38, God finally breaks in and speaks to Job and to his false comforters. As He is questioning Job, showing him and his companions their ignorance, God says to them: “Canst thou bind the sweet influences of Pleiades, or loose the bands of Orion? Canst thou bring forth Mazzaroth in his season? Or canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons?” (Job 38:31, 32). We see here reference to the constellations of Orion and Pleiades, and the star Arcturus. Also in the book of Job there is reference to Cetus, the Sea Monster, and to Draco, the Great Dragon. I would call your attention to Job 38:32a: “Canst thou bring forth Mazzaroth in his season?” Mazzaroth is a Hebrew word which means “The Constellations of the Zodiac.” In what may be the oldest book in all of human history, we find that the constellations of the zodiac were already clearly known and understood.... Having made it clear that the Bible expressly, explicitly, and repeatedly condemns what is now known as astrology, the fact remains that there was a God-given Gospel in the stars which lays beyond and behind that which has now been corrupted.

In his book, Kennedy condemned the practice of astrology, while asserting his view that the constellations of the zodiac were likely given by God to the first man as “record-keepers” of the original revelation of God.

If the primary assumption of this view is correct—that an original revelation was corrupted after the Fall of man and subsequently degenerated into mythologies of the pagan gods—one should be able to find numerous examples of such corruption from as far back as the beginning of history and within various civilizations around the world. Since the myths behind the gods would thus be “borrowed” ideas, the corrupted texts would be similar to the original truth, and, in that sense, evidence of a singular and original revelation. If the distortions of the original revelation were in fact energized by evil supernaturalism, the goal of the alterations would be to draw people away from the worship of Yahweh. In certain ancient legends—such as the *Enuma Elish*, the *Adapa Epic*, and the *Epic of Gilgamesh*—we discover early traces of the kaleidoscope of the original revelation plagiarized for the purpose of constructing the mythologies of the pagan gods.

### **Early Traces of Corruption**

Evidence suggests that the earliest legends of mythology were preceded by a belief in “the God” (Yahweh or YHWH to the Hebrews) as the Creator of all things and the “ruler of heaven.” Later, Satan was described as “the god of this world” (2 Corinthians 4:4), and the prince of the “air” (Ephesians 2:2). A fascinating struggle between the “ruler of the heavens” versus the “power of the air” occurred in early Sumerian mythology after Enki, the god of wisdom and water, created the human race out of clay. It appears that Anu, who was at first the most powerful of the Sumerian gods and the “ruler of the heavens,” was superseded in power and popularity by Enlil, the “god of the air.” To the Christian mind, this is perceived as nothing less than Satan, the god of the air, continuing his pretense to the throne of God, and his usurpation of Yahweh—“the Lord of the heavens.” It also indicates a corruption of the original revelation and perhaps an effort on the part of Satan to trick the Sumerians into perceiving him as the “supreme” god (above the God of heaven) and therefore worthy of adoration.

Correspondingly, in the Enuma Elish (a Babylonian epic), Marduk, the great god of the city of Babylon, was exalted above the benevolent gods and extolled as the creator of the world. Marduk was symbolized as a dragon (as is Satan in Revelation 12:9) called the Muscrussu, and his legend appears to contain several distortions of the important elements of the biblical account of creation. The Adapa Epic tells of another Babylonian legend also roughly equivalent to the Genesis account of creation. In it, Adapa, like Adam, underwent a test on food consumption, failed the test, and forfeited his opportunity for immortality. As a result of the failure, suffering and death were passed along to humanity. Finally, the Epic of Gilgamesh is a Sumerian poem, which, like the Adapa Epic, is deeply rooted in ancient Assyrian and Babylonian mythology. In 1872, George Smith discovered the Gilgamesh tablets while doing research on the Assyrian library of Ashurbanipal at the British Museum. Because of the strong similarity to the biblical account of Noah and the Great Flood, Bible scholars have viewed the Gilgamesh epic with interest since its discovery. As the legend goes, Gilgamesh, the king of the city of Uruk, was told about the flood from his immortal friend, Utnapishtim (the Sumerian equivalent of Noah). Utnapishtim described for Gilgamesh how the great god Enlil decided to destroy all of mankind because of its “noisy” sins. A plague was sent, but failed to persuade mankind of better behavior, and, consequently, the gods determined a complete extermination of the human race. Enki, the lord of the waters, was not happy

with the other gods for this decision and warned Utnapishtim of the coming deluge, instructing him to tear down his house and build a great boat. Utnapishtim obeyed Enki, built a great vessel, and sealed it with pitch and bitumen. The family of Utnapishtim loaded onto the boat together with various beasts and fowl. When the rains came, the doors were closed and the vessel rose up above the waters. Like Noah, Utnapishtim sent out a dove, and later a swallow, to search for dry land. They both returned. Later, a raven was released and it never came back. After several more days, the boat came to rest on the top of a mountain where Utnapishtim built an altar and offered a sacrifice of thanksgiving to the gods. As the gods smelled the sweet offering, all but Enlil repented for sending the flood.

In my first book, *Spiritual Warfare—The Invisible Invasion* [free as a pdf download at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)], I described another interesting example of the original revelation of God as distorted or plagiarized by Satan in order to draw men away from the worship of Yahweh. Concerning Asclepius, the Greek god of healing, I wrote:

At the base of Pergamum's hill stood the shrine of Asclepius, equipped with its own library, theater, sleeping chambers used in healing rituals, and long underground tunnels joining various other shrines to which pagans journeyed to receive the healing powers of Apollo's favorite son. The Christian Church considered these mystical powers as demonic, for the worship of Asclepius focused on the image of a serpent, sometimes called Glycon, an enormous serpent-figure some historians see as the origin for the modern symbol of healing—a serpent winding about a pole. Asclepius carried the lofty title, the hero god of healing.

In Numbers 21, Moses designed the brazen serpent on a pole that was used of God as an oracle of healing. Seven hundred forty-three years later, in 2 Kings 18:4, we find that Israel had begun to worship the brazen serpent with offerings and incense. From here the image was adopted into Greek mythology where it became the symbol of Asclepius, the Greek god of healing.

Asclepius was reported to have cured untold numbers from every conceivable disease—even raising a man from the dead. This caused Apollo through his Oracle at Delphi to declare, "Oh Asclepius! thou who art born a great joy to all mortals, whom lovely Coronis bare to me, the child of love, at rocky Epidaurus." Such a healer was he reported to be,

that Pluto, god of Hades, complained to Zeus that hardly anyone was dying anymore, and so Zeus destroyed Asclepius with a thunderbolt. Afterward, Apollo pleaded with Zeus to restore his son and this intercession so moved Zeus that he not only brought Asclepius back to life, but immortalized him as the god of medicine. First at Thessaly, and finally throughout the Greek and Roman world, Asclepius was worshiped as the saviour god of healing.

Besides the entwined serpent symbolism, plagiarism of the Original Revelation is found in Greek mythology where Asclepius has the power to heal the sick and to bring the dead back to life by drawing blood out from the side of the goddess of justice, the same deity who “returns” old Satan’s reign during the novus ordo seclorum. Asclepius was symbolized by a serpent winding about a pole, and was called the great “Physician.” The obvious intention of the serpent on a pole in Numbers 21 was to focus mankind on the coming Messiah, the true Great Physician, Jesus Christ, who would hang upon a pole to deliver His followers from sickness and from death by the blood that ran out from His side.

b) Ask the class to consider if ancient idolatry was the worship of demons, does the same phenomenon occur today, and if so, what examples might they cite?

5. Under the subtitle “Deeper Truth about Underworld Deities” starting on page 43 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors discuss “Mother Earth” or inner-world goddesses. Many “New Age” types including Wiccans who consider themselves “white witches” or positive nature worshippers take issue with the idea that what they are doing is demonic. What are your thoughts on this issue?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

a) Discuss the premise of “white witchcraft,” the idea that non-Christians can invoke “good” forces for theirs or others benefits while also “binding” negative influences. Ask the class if any of them were ever “into” witchcraft or goddess worship before becoming a Christian, and what their feelings are about it now.



- b) Perhaps read 1 Samuel chapter 28 with the following questions: 1) Why did God forbid communication with the witch of Endor (“maiden of the ob”)?; 2) Did the actual spirit of Samuel respond, or was this a deceiving spirit?; 3) Should this stand as a warning against trying to open doors to contact with spirits?
- c) Have members of the class read the following verses and explain what each one means to them: Isaiah 8:19; Leviticus 19:31; Luke 16:25-26; Deuteronomy 18:9-11.

**6. On page 46 of Forbidden Gates, the authors point out how, like ancient Greeks did, some Bible scholars believe the physical earth has “spirits” residing within it. This raises two interesting questions: 1) Are all of the spirits in the earth “bound” or can some of them move back and forth between dimensions? 2) Is Hell (one place spirits would not be able to arbitrarily depart) literally inside the earth? What are your thoughts on this?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Discuss how the idea of Hell being inside the earth is an ancient concept supported in the scriptures in such places as:

"For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly: so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights **in the heart of the earth**" (Mt 12:40)

Ephesians 4:9 says of Jesus: "Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into **the lower parts of the earth.**"

- b) Point out how the outer core of the Earth – about two-thirds of the way to the center – is molten iron, and at the inner core the temperature is believed to exceed 11,000 degrees Fahrenheit, hotter than the surface of the sun. (One wonders how the ancients perceived this. Perhaps seeing volcanoes?) Discuss how this fits in with biblical descriptions of hell as a place of fire. Examples in the New Testament include Luke 16:24; Matthew 13:42; 25:41; Rev. 20:15.
- c) Examples in the Old Testament include: Psalm 16:10; 55:15; Proverbs 9:18; Ezekiel 31:16-17

7. On page 52 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors publish a portion of an email they received from Dr. Michael Bennett on the use of theurgic or psychoactive drugs for the purposes of making contact with these underworld (or *otherworldly*) spirits via mind-altering. They also note how the ancient goddess Hecate was believed to control spirit-traversing gateways that could be opened by her into the human mind through the use of psychoactive drugs—a practice employed throughout Greek paganism as well as by shamans of other cultures but condemned in the Scriptures (Galatians 5:20; Revelation 9:21 and 18:23) as *pharmakeia*—the administering of drugs for sorcery or magical arts in connection with demonic contact. Do you believe such contact is possible using certain drugs, or is this quite literally “all in a person’s mind?”

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) According to the apocryphal book of 1 Enoch, it was the fallen angels (Watchers) that taught the use of mind-altering drugs as a tool for sorcery and spirit contact. Later in this study we will look into the history of the Watchers, but the teacher may wish at this point to note the following texts:

“And they took wives for themselves and everyone chose for himself one each. And they began to go into them and were promiscuous with them. **And they taught them charms and spells, and they showed them the cutting of roots and trees**” (1 Enoch 7:1).

“**Amezarak taught all those who cast spells and cut roots, Armaros the release of spells**, and Baraqiel astrologers, and Kokabiel portents, and Tamiel taught astrology, and Asradel taught the path of the Moon” (1 Enoch 8:3)

- b) Explain how there is a great deal about the human mind we still do not understand. A large part of our brain seems to be, for want of a better term, closed off. Ask the class if this could be because, at the fall of man, God chose to restrict certain areas of perception which, in our fallen state, we should not be able to perceive. Is this why scripture condemns the use of drugs as a method for opening mind-gates? Are we not supposed to attempt contact with what may be beyond normal perception?

c) Another biblical principle concerning the need to guard our minds concerns how psychoactive drugs for making spirit contact is doubly dangerous in that it might not only open contact within the mind for invisible forces, but the same drugs may also lower or alter our natural sense of self-defense. This is antithetical to scripture. We are to remain alert and sober-minded (1 Corinthians 15:34; 1 Thessalonians 5:4-8; 2 Timothy 4:5; 1 Peter 1:13; 4:7; 5:8), which is important to prayer (1 Peter 4:7). We are to remain vigilant against the wiles of the Devil (1 Peter 5:8) who seeks to deceive us.

**8. On pages 58-60 of Forbidden Gates, the authors point out how, either intentionally or unintentionally, people can enter into a “deal with the devil” as a result of their collective will and imagination. Does this bring us back to the first question in this week’s study, that spirits go where they are invited? If so, what is the best course of action or lifestyle choice in your opinion with regard to making contact with supernatural entities?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

a) The teacher should end this class by pointing out how the quick answer to the final question (#8 above) is simply “don’t do it.” However, the issue can be far more complicated, in that people usually do not set out to “make a deal with the devil” or to bring themselves into contact with negative forces. It can begin with the smallest of choices – perhaps the use of drugs or alcohol to numb the pain of a bad marriage, or for younger people because of a dare by peers to try an illegal drug, or for others to ward off depression as a result of financial pressure – and years later they find themselves addicted and participating in experiences (even occultism) that they never would have dreamed they would get involved with. This is why we must be sober, be vigilant; because our adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walks about, seeking whom he may devour (see 1 Peter 5:8)

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK TWO

(Read chapter two of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. Whether you believe the claims made by Crowley, Parsons and Hubbard referred to in the first few paragraphs of Forbidden Gates, Chapter Two are true, would you say the following concept is accurate: that spirits go where they are invited?
2. On pages 34-36 of Forbidden Gates, Tom and Nita Horn describe how amulets or talismans as magical items have been historically used to open and close (bind and loose) supernatural gateways. Does the use of such amulets (statues, candles, pendants, rings, etc) actually work? Is the use of such by certain Christian sects a good or dangerous idea?
3. In what way would you define the most appropriate Christian method of binding or loosening supernaturalism? Can one actually “bind” demons, and if so, in what way and when should this occur? How does one “loose” the power of God in their lives?
4. On pages 38-43 of Forbidden Gates, the authors provide background on certain goddesses and rituals. Did such beliefs actually represent the manifestation of evil supernaturalism – literal spiritual forces against which the Church was opposed – or were these beliefs simply harmless mythology?
5. Under the subtitle “Deeper Truth about Underworld Deities” starting on page 43 of Forbidden Gates, the authors discuss “Mother Earth” or inner-world goddesses. Many “New Age” types including Wiccans who consider themselves “white witches” or positive nature worshippers take issue with the idea that what they are doing is demonic. What are your thoughts on this issue?
6. On page 46 of Forbidden Gates, the authors point out how, like ancient Greeks did, some Bible scholars believe the physical earth has “spirits” residing within it. This raises two interesting questions: 1) Are all of the spirits in the earth “bound” or can some of them move back and forth between dimensions? 2) Is Hell – one place spirits would not be able to arbitrarily depart – literally inside the earth? What are your thoughts on this?
7. On page 52 of Forbidden Gates, the authors publish a portion of an email they received from Dr. Michael Bennett on the use of theurgic or psychoactive drugs for the purposes of making contact with these underworld (or otherworldly) spirits via mind-altering. They also note how the ancient goddess Hecate was believed to control spirit-traversing gateways that could be opened by her into the human mind through the use of psychoactive drugs—a practice employed throughout Greek paganism as well as by shamans of other cultures but condemned in the Scriptures (Galatians 5:20; Revelation 9:21 and 18:23) as pharmakeia—the administering of drugs for sorcery or magical arts in connection with demonic contact. Do you believe such contact is possible using certain drugs, or is this quite literally “all in a person’s mind?”
8. On pages 58-60 of Forbidden Gates, the authors point out how, either intentionally or unintentionally, people can enter into a “deal with the devil” as a result of their collective will and imagination. Does this bring us back to the first question in this week’s study, that spirits go where they are invited? If so, what is the best course of action or lifestyle choice in your opinion with regard to making contact with supernatural entities?

# LESSON #3

## SUCH BEAUTIFUL DECEPTION

Have the study group read chapter three of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSE:** 1 Timothy 4:1-2

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #3 is to establish the idea that paganism is entering the mainstream, threatening even to permanently alter contemporary concepts of Christian theology.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

The third chapter of *Forbidden Gates* opens with a shocking statement: "Over the past century, a generation of Christians and other religious persons have systematically challenged and then abandoned fundamental precepts of New Testament theology, giving birth to new forms of secularized spirituality fueled by human potential and an amorphous mixture of Buddhism, pantheistic Christianity, and occult traditions. Many of the most popular doctrines celebrated today cleverly conceal this ancient carnival of pagan mystical occultism by wrapping it in prosperity theology, self-help messages, goddess-centered environmental theology, and dominionism and the elevation of man. Instead of living by faith, as defined in Scriptures centered on the person of Jesus Christ and expressed through personal sacrifice and transformation, emergent church leaders allure congregants with seductive messages of thrilling material benefits that historically were shown to be keys to opening gateways to and forming pacts with Faustian forces." Today we will examine this incredible statement and decide for ourselves whether such claim is true.

- 1. On page 61 of *Forbidden Gates* the author's state that this generation is systematically challenging and then abandoning fundamental precepts of New Testament theology. Do you agree with this comment? If not, why? If so, why?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) In previous classes the subject of "idolatry" was discussed as a leading indicator of social invasion by evil supernaturalism. Remind the class how the Bible defines idolatry as the worship of demons then ask if there is evidence within modern culture of a revival of such paganism.
  - b) Read the following verses or have class members read them: Acts 7:41-42; Romans 1:21-32; 1 Cor. 10:20. Follow this by reading Revelation 9:20 and pointing out that, as in antiquity, so in modern times, those who practice idolatry are guilty of worshipping "demons." Discuss how the beliefs and rituals that were Biblically defined as "doctrines of devils" have been revived through the New Age Movement, Wicca, etc. Since the Bible speaks in such absolutes regarding the dynamics of idolatry/paganism, and further since demons are eternal personalities that desire the worship of men, is it fair to conclude that a revival of paganism is part and parcel to an invasion or increase of manifested evil spirit activity?
  - c) Bring up the question of popular media (for instance Harry Potter books and movies) and whether today's youth are being targeted by "demonic indoctrination." Ask what sources of media may be selling occultism to this generation -- Games? Music? Books? Advertising? The teacher may wish to illustrate this if possible. (For instance, a youth at the *Forbidden Gates* author's church gave them a Satanic Bible found at school. The Horn's discovered a blood sacrifice, which the owner of the book had made and recorded inside the book. The authors used this as an illustration of media targeting children and then destroyed the book. It made an unusually powerful impact on the audience).
  - d) The teacher may wish to have a youth (or youths) visit the class and show/tell of their experiences within public school or society regarding media / indoctrination influences.
- 2. Besides the abandonment of Judeo-Christian values within contemporary society, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* also contend there has been a systematic unraveling of**

**New Testament theology by institutionalized Christianity this century systematic with progressive adoption of pagan church activity. Have you witnessed such practices in your church or community similar to what is described by Samantha Smith on page 62 of *Forbidden Gates*?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to verify the conclusions by Tom and Nita Horn via recent studies. For instance:

**Americans Mix Multiple Faiths: Eastern, New Age Beliefs Widespread**

<http://pewforum.org/Other-Beliefs-and-Practices/Many-Americans-Mix-Multiple-Faiths.aspx>

**Moralistic Therapeutic Deism--The New American Religion**

<http://www.christianpost.com/article/20050418/moralistic-therapeutic-deism-the-new-american-religion/>

**U.S. Christians Fail Religion Test**

[http://host.madison.com/wsj/news/opinion/column/article\\_7e4acda5-1f16-5144-9d5c-9810f54efe1a.html](http://host.madison.com/wsj/news/opinion/column/article_7e4acda5-1f16-5144-9d5c-9810f54efe1a.html)

- b) The teacher may also benefit from the article below by Tom Horn from 2009:

**Burning Man Just One of the Signs the Occult Is Sweeping the Globe**

By Thomas Horn for Cutting Edge Magazine  
RNN News Sr. Reporter

Esoteric festivals with crowds in the tens of thousands are growing in popularity

BLACK ROCK CITY, Nevada -- Across the sea in the UK, Brighton proudly wears the title these days of 'Capital of Occulture.' This year's Occulture festivities exhibited bigger than ever venues - sacred music and dance, clairvoyance, psychic and tarot readers, chakra, traditional witchcraft, tattooing, piercing, fetish satanism, shamanism, transcendent techniques, and lectures favoring paganism from the original Book of Shadows.

And then there was the 'Pleasure Dome' where magicians, sorcerers and witches discussed their trade, including Mogg Morgon, founder of the Golden Dawn Occult Society, Ralph Harvey, a prominent Wiccan High Priest, and Emrys, a Shaman of the Cromlech Covenant.

On the heels of this in the U.S., the Burning Man Festival has grown to become the largest ever, surpassing last year's 33,000 participants as the number of earth-worshipping pagans swell the ranks of party-goers from across Canada, Brazil, Germany, Russia, and 25 other countries to an isolated corner of Black Rock Desert in Nevada.

As in the past, this year's clothing-optional Burning Man offers a no-holds-barred "Woodstock" style festival where neo-pagans, wiccans, transvestitie entertainers, curiosity seekers, and old hippies can go to trance, perform rituals, burn sacrifices to deities, fornicate, and otherwise "express" themselves freely.

The 40-foot-high effigy Burning Man (the "Spirit Cave Man"-- sacred to local Indians and New Agers) will be torched as usual together with just about everything else at the close of the festivity.

## **UNDERSTANDING THE OCCULT FIRES PHENOMENON**

The spirit of the occult has existed since the beginning of time. Like an insidious cancer—unseen, patient, deadly—it has grown. Indications of its presence have been felt occasionally, and confirmations of its actuality have been documented from Brighton to Washington D.C.

As we approach the culmination of the “new order of the ages,” cult experts forecast a continuing revival of such mysticism. While church attendance continues to decline across the United States and Britain, adherents of the occult expand their "services" to meet the desires and mystical interests of a spiritually hungry world.

New Age expert Judy Vorfeld says, “Dabbling in the realm of the occult is currently stylish. Even some Christians seem unable to avoid the attraction of this colorful, seductive world.”



She's right. From Burning Man festivals to public school Environmental Education to faddish television good-guys and bad-girls, today's generation is lapping up as much New Age Occultianity as they can get their hands on. Whether it's comic book heroes that teach youth the dangerous Persephonian idea that a person can be in league with the devil and still be a good person, or the syncretistic goals of the Occulture Festival and Burning Man, the glowing fire of pagan revival can no longer be denied.

## **THE REAL BURNING MAN**

From a Biblical point of view, powerful and ancient entities are behind the revival of paganism. In the air above and the earth beneath are nefarious progenitors of esoteric mysticism. "Demons" to some and "gods" to others, such forces have numerous titles. They can appear in hideous forms or as beautiful angels of light. They are the "wicked spirits" (poneria: the collective body of demon soldiers comprising Satan's hordes), "rulers of darkness" (kosmokrators: governing spirits of darkness), "powers" (exousia: high ranking powers of evil), and "principalities" (arche: commanding generals over Satan's fallen army) of Ephesians 6:12. As the "gods and goddesses" of the underworld, they live today and encourage mysticism among pagans, witches, New Agers and even church-goers in at least the following ways:

Aphrodite—sensuality, fertility rites, wiccan rituals, sacred prostitution.  
Amun-Ra—masturbation, self realization, environmentalism, Darwinism.  
Apis—animal worship, animal rights, animal channeling, occultianity.  
Apollo—humanism, oracles, channeling, psychics, drugs, visualization.  
Artemis—goddess worship, animal worship, animal rights, lesbianism.  
Asclepius—holistic medicine, psychic dreaming, spirit-guide animals.  
Athene—goddess worship, feminism, the spirituality movement, lesbianism.  
Baal—oracles, polytheism, abortion, fertility issues.  
Demeter—environmental education, earth worship, goddess worship.  
Dionysus—drunkenness, freudianism, ecstasy, pornography, lesbianism, abortion.  
Eros—eroticism, mystic sex, body worship, body piercing, sacred prostitution.  
Gaia—earth worship, environmentalism, paganism, pantheism, sweat lodges.  
Geb—environmental movement, animal rights, eco-paganism.  
Hades—devil worship, occultism, spiritism, necromancy.  
Hathor—goddess worship, earth worship, animal rights, animal worship.

Hecate—witchcraft, necromancy, crystals, spells, druidism, feminism.  
Heka—mysticism, demonism, animal rights, environmentalism.  
Hypnos—hypnotism, psychic dreaming, prognostication, e.s.p., clairvoyance.  
Imhoteb—mystic healing, animal dancing, holistic medicine, vision quests.  
Isis—wicca, witchcraft, goddess worship, magic, channeling, visualization.  
Min and Qetesh—fertility rites, body worship, sensuality, pornography.  
Osiris—occultianity, necromancy, anthropomorphism, occultism, spiritism.  
Persephone—animism, zoroastrianism, dualism, magic, necromancy.  
Ptah—universalism, pantheism, mysticism, holistic medicine.  
Sekhmet—environmentalism, mystic medicine, animal worship.  
Seth—homosexuality, rebellion, earth worship, environmental movement.  
Vatchit—devil worship, channeling, trancing, visualization, necromancy.  
Zeus—satanism, transexualism, pantheism, oracles, animal worship.

By whatever names they may otherwise be called, the underworld spirits elevated in the Burning Man and Occulture festivals are gathering the combined efforts of the kingdom of Satan toward a conspiracy of apocalyptic proportions. As a consequence, we are experiencing an unprecedented pagan revival at a time when the United States and Britain are considered the most advanced economic and technological powers in the world.

Where will the revival of paganism lead?

Billy Graham says, "Lucifer, our archenemy, controls one of the most powerful and well-oiled war machines in the universe. He controls principalities, powers, and dominions. Every nation, city, village, and individual has felt the hot breath of his evil power. He is already gathering the nations of the world for the last great battle in the war against Christ—Armageddon."

Many pagans would disagree with Graham, saying they reject the idea of personal evil spirits such as Satan and his angels. The concepts of Hell and a future Great Judgment are also disregarded. But the reality of Hell and the doom of Satan's followers is described in the Bible. The "old gods" of the underworld will be destroyed by Yahweh. "The Lord will be terrible unto them: for he will famish all the gods of the earth" (Zeph. 2:11). "The Lord of hosts, the God of Israel, saith; Behold, I will punish...the gods" (Jer. 46:25). Yahweh will also punish the leader of the gods, that old serpent, called the Devil, and his human followers. In Isaiah we read:

Come, my people, enter thou into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about thee: hide thyself as it were for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast. For, behold, the Lord cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain. In that day the Lord with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish Leviathan the piercing serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea. (Isa. 26:20-27:1)

However futile, the pagan gods will retaliate, and a war of indescribable intensity will occur. This is the war mentioned by Graham. It will be fought on land and sea, in the heavens above, and in the earth below, in the physical and spiritual worlds. It will include "Michael and his angels [fighting] against the dragon; and the dragon [fighting] and his angels" (Rev. 12:7). According to the Bible, last days pagans will join the battle, calling upon "idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and wood" (Rev. 9:20) to summon "the spirits of devils working miracles, which go forth unto the Kings of the earth...to gather them to the battle of that great day...[to] a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon" (Rev. 16:13-14; 16). There, in the valley of Megiddo, the omnipotent Christ will utterly repel the forces of darkness and destroy the pagan armies. Blood will flow like rivers, and the fowl of the air will "eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the princes of the earth."

Between now and then, Christian's have the same opportunity to preach the same Gospel that caused the Oracle at Delphi to surrender in 362 A.D.

To the physician of the Emperor Julian, the Byzantine ruler who tried to restore paganism after Christianity had become the official religion of the Byzantine Empire, the god Apollo sent message: "Tell the King," said the oracle, "that the curiously built temple has fallen to the ground, that bright Apollo no longer has a roof over his head, or prophetic laurel, or babbling spring. Yes, even the murmuring water has dried up."

- 3. On page 63 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors tell an unusual story about a large Assemblies of God church where the intercessory prayer team was claiming to be possessed or controlled by demonic spirits during Sunday services. Later in the same chapter they describe youth camps where they witnessed Christian kids being trained**

**by church leaders to build labyrinth paths made of sticks and stones in the woods in mimicry of ancient paganism related to the mythology of Queen Pasiphae, an immortal daughter of the sun-god Helios, who, like her two siblings, Aeetes and Kirke, possessed the powers of witchcraft (*pharmakeia*, discussed in last week's study), which was used every nine years (this part of the myth varies) to draw children into the wooded labyrinth of Minotaur as a sacrifice. Are such Christians playing with fire, inviting contact with demonic powers?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) On the myth of Pasiphae and the Minotaur, the teacher may benefit from this excerpt from the Pseudo-Apollodorus, *Bibliotheca* 3. 8 - 11 (trans. Aldrich) (Greek mythographer C2nd A.D.):

"Minos aspired to the throne [of Krete], but was rebuffed. He claimed, however, that he had received the sovereignty from the gods, and to prove it he said that whatever he prayed for would come about. So while sacrificing to Poseidon, he prayed for a bull to appear from the depths of the sea, and promised to sacrifice it upon its appearance. And Poseidon did send up to him a splendid bull. Thus Minos received the rule, but he sent the bull to his herds and sacrificed another . . . Poseidon was angry that the bull was not sacrificed, and turned it wild. He also devised that Pasiphae should develop a lust for it. In her passion for the bull she took on as her accomplice an architect named Daidalos . . . He built a wooden cow on wheels, . . . skinned a real cow, and sewed the contraption into the skin, and then, after placing Pasiphae inside, set it in a meadow where the bull normally grazed. The bull came up and had intercourse with it, as if with a real cow. Pasiphae gave birth to Asterios, who was called Minotauros. He had the face of a bull, but was otherwise human. Minos, following certain oracular instructions, kept him confined and under guard in the labyrinth. This labyrinth, which Daidalos built, was a cage with convoluted flexions that disorders debouchment."

- b) On page 66 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors also mention "spirit animals" and the role they play in ancient as well as modern pagan belief. The teacher may want to ask the class why there seems to be a role between animals and paganism (the Minotaur above is only one example of animal-human hybrid concepts in mythology). Is this because some animals are believed to be able to see into the spirit world (i.e. Balaam's donkey)?

- c) The teacher may also wish to discuss how certain animals have been perceived in pagan cultures as mediums to the spirit world or as “familiars”. The following excerpts from Wikipedia may lead to interesting class discussion:

In European folklore and folk-belief of the Mediaeval and Early Modern periods, familiar spirits, sometimes referred to simply as familiars, were supernatural entities that were believed to assist witches and cunning folk in their practice of magic. They would appear in numerous guises, often as an animal, but also at times as a human or humanoid figure, and according to the records of the time, they were described as "clearly defined, three-dimensional... forms, vivid with colour and animated with movement and sound" by those alleging to have come into contact with them, unlike later descriptions of ghosts with their "smoky, undefined form[s]".

Due to their association with older forms of magic, in the 20th century a number of magical practitioners, including adherents of the Neopagan religion of Wicca, have once more begun to utilize the concept.

[On black cats and dogs in particular, Wikipedia adds]

In Western history, black cats have often been looked upon as a symbol of evil omens, specifically being suspected of being the familiars of witches; other cultures consider them to be bad luck as well. The gambling world is afraid of a black cat: it is believed that if you are on your way to a casino and a black cat crosses your road or path, you should not go to the casino and go home; most players believe that black cats bring them bad luck.[2] Other black creatures, such as black dogs, have shared in the prejudice and suspicion of being "familiars".

The black cat in folklore has been thought to change into human shape to act as a spy or courier for witches or demons. During the Middle Ages, these superstitions led people to kill black cats.

- 4. On pages 67-68, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* mention the god Apollo and discuss the role that the female prophetesses of the deity – the Pythians – played in ancient times. They also cite an ancient account of the accuracy of the pythian prophecies. Is it conceivable that pagans under demonic influence could sometimes actually foresee**

**the future or make accurate predictions? If so, under what circumstances would this be possible?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may find the following excerpt from Tom Horn’s new book [Apollyon Rising 2012](#) helpful:

According to the Greeks, the greatest outcome of the love affair between Zeus and Leto was the birth of the most beloved of the oracle gods—Apollo. More than any other god in ancient history, Apollo represented the passion for prophetic inquiry among the nations. Though mostly associated with classical Greece, scholars agree that Apollo existed before the Olympian pantheon and some even claim that he was at first the god of the Hyperboreans—an ancient and legendary people to the north. Herodotus came to this conclusion and recorded how the Hyperboreans continued in worship of Apollo even after his induction into the Greek pantheon, making an annual pilgrimage to the land of Delos, where they participated in the famous Greek festivals of Apollo. Lycia—a small country in southwest Turkey—also had an early connection with Apollo, where he was known as Lykeios, which some have joined to the Greek Lykos or “wolf,” thus making one of his ancient titles, “the wolf slayer.”

Apollo, with his twin sister Artemis, was said by the Greeks to have been born in the land of Delos—the children of Zeus (Jupiter) and of the Titaness Leto. While an important oracle existed there and played a role in the festivals of the god, it was the famous oracle at Delphi that became the celebrated mouthpiece of the Olympian....

The story... of the Python-woman in the book of Acts is difficult to understand. She undoubtedly grasped the damage Paul’s preaching could do to her industry. Furthermore, the Pythia of Delphi had a historically unfriendly relationship with the Jews and was considered a pawn of demonic power. Quoting again from *Spiritual Warfare—The Invisible Invasion* [download the pdf version free at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)], we read:

Delphi with its surrounding area, in which the famous oracle ordained and approved the worship of Asclepius, was earlier known by the name

Pytho, a chief city of Phocis. In Greek mythology, Python—the namesake of the city of Pytho—was the great serpent who dwelt in the mountains of Parnassus.... In Acts 16:16, the demonic woman who troubled Paul was possessed with a spirit of divination. In Greek this means a spirit of python (a seeress of Delphi, a pythoness)...[and] reflects...the accepted Jewish belief...that the worship of Asclepius [Apollo’s son] and other such idolatries were, as Paul would later articulate in 1 Corinthians 10:20, the worship of demons.

It could be said that the Pythia of Acts 16 simply prophesied the inevitable. That is, the spirit that possessed her knew the time of Apollo’s reign was over for the moment, and that the spread of Christianity would lead to the demise of the Delphic oracle. This is possible, as demons are sometimes aware of changing dispensations. (Compare the pleas of the demons in Matthew 8:29, “What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time?”). The last recorded utterance of the oracle at Delphi seems to indicate the spirit of the Olympians understood this.

From Man, Myth, and Magic, we read: [Vol 1, 160]

Apollo...delivered his last oracle in the year 362 AD, to the physician of the Emperor Julian, the Byzantine ruler who tried to restore paganism after Christianity had become the official religion of the Byzantine Empire. “Tell the King,” said the oracle, “that the curiously built temple has fallen to the ground, that bright Apollo no longer has a roof over his head, or prophetic laurel, or babbling spring. Yes, even the murmuring water has dried up.”

- b) In addition to demons contemplating dispensational changes, the teacher may wish to discuss how extra-biblical prophecies by those such as the most famous of the Pythians – the Cumaean Sibyl – and even the Maya were sometimes astonishingly accurate. Occult power may have provided supernatural perception, as illustrated by Jannes and Jambres (2 Timothy 3:8), who withstood Moses in the Old Testament, as well as the Pythian priestess in the New Testament cited above (Acts 16:16–17), who somehow knew that God had sent Paul. A copy of the book [Apollyon Rising 2012](#) will be helpful here, but if the teacher does not have a copy of this book, please see the first 30 entries of the authors blog site here: <http://defenderpublishing.blogspot.com/>

c) The teacher may want to point out how the personality changes of the Pythian (becoming melancholic, defiant, or even animal-like during prophecies) is symptomatic of historic and biblical demonic possession.

5. On page 71 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors point out how Pythian-like channeling as well as other forms of divining has been revived in recent years. Were you aware of this and do you know people that use such things as Ouija boards or other devices for making spirit contact?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The excerpt from *The Gods Who Walk Among Us* (download the free pdf version at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)] by Tom Horn below is a bit dated but may be helpful for the teacher on this question concerning spirit contact and mediums:

As we approach the culmination of the “new order of the ages,” cult experts forecast a staggering revival of idolatry and eastern mysticism. As church attendance declines across the United States, Buddhists, Muslims, Hindus, Theosophists, Christian Scientists, and New Agers, expand to meet the desires and mystical interests of Americans. Tarot card reading is at an all-time high. Psychic phone lines are jammed with over \$300 million in calls per year, and celebrities such as LaToya Jackson and Dionne Warwick lend credibility to psychic consultations. Even the U.S. Government has shown interest in such phenomena. During the 1995 budget cuts, the C.I.A. was forced to release a \$20 million project (“Operation Stargate”) aimed at studying the usefulness of psychics in gathering military secrets from foreign powers. The wives of two U.S. Presidents, Nancy Reagan and Hillary Clinton, have also been the subject of public examination since it was discovered they consulted with astrologers and psychics. Hillary Clinton went so far as to channel “conversations” with the spirit of Eleanor Roosevelt. Whether such conversations included a White House psychomanteum, or other oracular device, is unknown, but the obvious widespread interest in such paranormal activity substantiates what Judy Vorfeld has said: “Dabbling in the realm of the occult is currently stylish. Even some Christians seem unable to avoid the attraction of this colorful, seductive world.”



The colorful seduction of mysticism is reaching into every fiber of our culture. From public school Environmental Education to faddish television good-guys, today's generation is bombarded with a New Age Occultianity (western Christian beliefs mixed with occultism) that popularizes the supernatural. Beloved comic book heroes such as "Spawn" teach our youth the dangerous Persephonian idea that a person can be in league with the devil, and still be a good person. Such doctrines of "harmonizing duality" are extremely popular (comics of Spawn have sold over 100 million copies) and blend nicely with the syncretistic goals of the New Age Movement. Judy Vorfeld continues:

The mystical, make-believe world of yesteryear, whose delightful stories tickled the imaginations of generations of young people, has evolved into a magical world of pseudo-reality for people of all ages. It's seen as a world of "good" creatures having supernatural powers and using them to stamp out "evil" beings. These popular characters are displayed on such items as cereal boxes, T-shirts, glassware, jewelry, bumper stickers, bedding, school folders, and toothbrushes....Television paved the way by giving us sympathetic, clever characters like Samantha, Tabitha, Endora, and Jeannie....Now our culture is surrounded with supernatural cuddly toys, adorable magic elves, pastel-colored unicorns, and extraterrestrial entities who roam earth's atmosphere offering love, justice, comfort, reincarnation, and other types of eternal life.

Christians must realize that powerful and ancient entities are behind such mystical playthings. In the air above and the earth beneath are nefarious progenitors of Old/New Age mysticism. "Gods" to some and "demons" to others, such forces have numerous titles. They can appear in hideous forms or as beautiful angels of light. They are the "wicked spirits" (poneria: the collective body of demon soldiers comprising Satan's hordes), "rulers of darkness" (kosmokrators: governing spirits of darkness), "powers" (exousia: high ranking powers of evil), and "principalities" (arche: commanding generals over Satan's fallen army) of Ephesians 6:12. As "the gods that walk among us," they live today and encourage mysticism among pagans, witches, New Agers, churchgoers, and the general public...

- b) Ask the class if any of them ever used an Ouija board or similar device before becoming a Christian and to describe the event. Did anything happen? How did they feel afterward?

c) Ask a similar question about the Psychomanteum mentioned on page 71 of *Forbidden Gates*. (The New Age psychomanteum, which is used to facilitate contact with deceased relatives or family members, is increasingly encouraged by New Age psychiatrists as a method for dealing with grief. Sometimes, under nefarious conditions, the mirror-contact phenomenon spontaneously occurs. As a teenager, the co-author of *Forbidden Gates* [Nita] was involved in a horrific accident that killed her dad and sister. Following the accident, her 11-year-old sister “materialized” in the bedroom mirror on two occasions. Since the house she lived in was formerly occupied by gypsies and Nita was not a Christian at the time, she believes these facts contributed to the spontaneous psychomanteum activity).

**6. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* close chapter three pointing out a number of modern television shows in which contact with “ghosts” and other spirits are actively sought. Electronic devices such as Electromagnetic Field (EMF) detectors are used by paranormal investigators on popular programs such as *Ghost Hunters* because it is believed that in attempting to communicate or manifest, spirits gather energy from their surroundings, a process they believe can be measured with EMF detectors. Consequently, sales of EMF detectors have rising sharply due to public interest in the paranormal. Have you watched or do you watch any of these programs, and how do you feel about them? Do you think any of it is real?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Conclude today’s class with an open discussion around the big question – should we under any circumstances be trying to contact “the other side”? Ghosts? Demons? Extraterrestrial intelligence?
- b) Depending on the class and circumstances, this could be a perfect time to pray for persons in the class that may have admitted past or present uses of occult devices for making contact with the spirit world. Assure them that through repentance, the Lord will forgive and protect them.

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK THREE

(Read chapter three of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. On page 61 of Forbidden Gates the author's state that this generation is systematically challenging and then abandoning fundamental precepts of New Testament theology. Do you agree with this comment? If not, why? If so, why?
2. Besides the abandonment of Judeo-Christian values within contemporary society, the authors of Forbidden Gates also contend there has been a systematic unraveling of New Testament theology by institutionalized Christianity this century systematic with progressive adoption of pagan church activity. Have you witnessed such practices in your church or community similar to what is described by Samantha Smith on page 62 of Forbidden Gates?
3. On page 63 of Forbidden Gates, the authors tell an unusual story about a large Assemblies of God church where the intercessory prayer team was claiming to be possessed or controlled by demonic spirits during Sunday services. Later in the same chapter they describe youth camps where they witnessed Christian kids being trained by church leaders to build labyrinth paths made of sticks and stones in the woods in mimicry of ancient paganism related to the mythology of Queen Pasiphae, an immortal daughter of the sun-god Helios, who, like her two siblings, Aeetes and Kirke, possessed the powers of witchcraft (pharmakeia, discussed in last week's study), which was used every nine years (this part of the myth varies) to draw children into the wooded labyrinth of Minotaur as a sacrifice. Are such Christians playing with fire, inviting contact with demonic powers?
4. On pages 67-68, the authors of Forbidden Gates mention the god Apollo and discuss the role that the female prophetesses of the deity – the Pythians – played in ancient times. They also cite an ancient account of the accuracy of their prophecies. Is it conceivable that pagans under demonic influence could actually foresee the future or make accurate predictions at times? If so, how would this be possible?
5. On page 71 of Forbidden Gates, the authors point out how Pythian-like channelings, as well as other forms of divining have been revived in recent years. Were you aware of this and do you know people that use such things as Ouija boards or other devices for making spirit contact?
6. The authors of Forbidden Gates close chapter three pointing out a number of television shows today in which contact with "ghosts" and other spirits are actively sought. Electronic devices such as Electromagnetic Field (EMF) detectors are used by paranormal investigators on popular programs such as Ghost Hunters because it is believed that in attempting to communicate or manifest, spirits gather energy from their surroundings, a process they believe can be measured with EMF detectors. Have you (or do you) watched any of these programs and how did you feel about it? Did you think any of it was real?

# LESSON #4

## SATAN'S JURISDICTION

Have the study group read chapter four of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSE:** Mark 1:23-27

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #4 is to establish that Satan continues to hold influence over the world and that his jurisdiction is sometimes determined by human decisions/invitation.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

The fourth chapter of *Forbidden Gates* begins with an interesting story concerning theologian Robert Cornwall, a pastor and early mentor of the authors of the book. According to the account, a building that had been converted into a church had an occult history that seemed to connect it with evil supernaturalism, literally resident evil. What did you make of this story?

- 1. On page 77 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors recite a story told by Dr. Robert Cornwall in the 1970s at Redwood Family Campmeeting in Northern California. Do you think this account actually happened, or was it simply a figment of an overactive imagination if not an outright lie?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Because of the unusual ramifications of this story, some timid believers may be fearful that, if a “church” building can be invaded by evil supernaturalism, what is to protect their homes? Begin this class by contrasting the difference between buildings and locations that are dedicated to agents of evil activity, and locations that are not. The teacher may also want to retell or read the story from Job 1:8-10 where the Lord had a “hedge of protection” around Job, which Satan could not pass beyond without God’s permission.
- b) The story by Cornwall also raises the broader question of buildings in general that are “haunted.” Ask the class to discuss this, whether they believe it is possible that buildings, ghost ships, or other locations where evil, suicide, or murderous activity has occurred can become a magnet of malevolent spirits. If so, is it the spirits of dead humans or demons? An online article on the subject states:

*The Bible teaches very clearly that there are indeed spirit beings who can connect with and appear in our physical world. The Bible identifies these beings as angels and demons. Angels are spirit beings who are faithful in serving God. Angels are righteous, good, and holy. Demons are fallen angels, angels who rebelled against God. Demons are evil, deceptive, and destructive. According to 2 Corinthians 11:14-15, demons masquerade as “angels of light” and as “servants of righteousness.” Appearing as a “ghost” and impersonating a deceased human being definitely seem to be within the power and abilities that demons possess.*

*The closest biblical example of a “haunting” is found in Mark 5:1-20. A legion of demons possessed a man and used the man to haunt a graveyard. There were no ghosts involved. It was a case of a normal person being controlled by demons to terrorize the people of that area. (Excerpted from <http://www.gotquestions.org/ghosts-hauntings.html>)*

- c) The teacher may also wish to point out how some Hebrew Scholars such as Dr. Michael Heiser do not agree that “ghosts” and demons are one and the same. For instance his research on the subject at these links:

<http://michaelsheiser.com/TheNakedBible/2008/05/a-biblical-view-of-ghosts-part-1/#fnref-15-1>

<http://www.thedivinecouncil.com/What%20is%20an%20Elohim.pdf>

2. The second issue raised by the Cornwall story has to do with “legal” rights, which Satan may possess over people and property. The authors claim that to this day the Devil maintains limited jurisdiction as the “god of this world” and can, essentially, enter into binding agreements with people and institutions creating a covenant relationship including specific rights. Do you agree or disagree with this premise?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher should point out during class how men’s free moral agency is involved with this process. BOTH parties, human and demonic, “negotiate” via verbal or non-verbal conduct during which a compromise is reached on the part of the individual allowing for surrender of space or influence in trade for something “promised.” Recall the temptation of Jesus Christ during which Satan offered control over the kingdoms of the earth if Jesus would worship him. At that moment, Jesus could have entered into a contract or covenant with the Devil – it was His option to choose through free will – yet thankfully He rejected this offer and thus entered no “agreement” with Satan.
- b) On page 81 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors state how such binding agreements may be affected within 1) personal property; 2) commercial property; 3) public property; and 4) intellectual property. Ask the class to imagine, discuss, or provide examples of each of these areas where dedication or surrender to satanic forces of such property and/or space is illustrated in the real world. For instance, how an Ouija Board in one’s home, especially if used, could allow for surrender of space to discarnate evil. Other examples might include wearing occult jewelry or dedication of electronic devices for pornography.
- c) Finally, point out the good news – how when we are born again, these contracts with the Devil can be nullified by the Court of Heaven via the authority of our attorney Jesus Christ and the judgment of God the Father. Colossians chapter two actually contains a “legal” statement in this regard, saying in verses 13-14, “And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses; **Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us**, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;” This reference mirrors the ancient prisons of the times where charges or claims against individuals for committing crimes or for not fulfilling contracted agreements was posted on the wall outside the inmates cell. This public record was called “the handwriting of ordinances.” According to this portion of

scripture, the sins and even agreements we had with the law and/or evil supernaturalism – the handwriting of ordinances – was nullified at the time of our conversion.

- 3. In addition to individual property surrendered to Satanic dominion, the authors claim entire geographies can, through specific activity or judgments, come under control of evil supernaturalism, presumably through a majority or collective agreement within human populations that stands at odds with moral law. If you agree, in what way do you imagine this process works?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Read this question and guide the group into a discussion of territorial demonism, i.e., that if individuals can experience possession by rejecting the perimeters or moral laws of God, larger people-groups (cities, counties, states,) may also undergo invasion of evil if, for instance, citizens empower local governments to reject laws based on biblical precepts, replacing them with humanistic or alternative forms of government.
- b) Have the class read Psalms 33:12 and discuss whether the US (or whatever country you live in) has acted in recent history in such a way as to reject moral law and/or to embrace principles in contrast to those activities that bring the blessings of God upon a nation (for instance abortion issues and the sanctity of life, limiting religious and other freedoms, etc).
- c) Read Psalm 78:40-49 and point out how “evil angels” troubled Israel only after they rejected the governance of God. Discuss how changes in U.S. law (or elsewhere) may have impacted society and ask the pointed question: “Do these changes in law, morality, and government indicate an invasion of nefarious evil forces, or are they simply the results of a culture in cycle?”
- d) The teacher may find pages 13-46 in the book *Spiritual Warfare: The Invisible Invasion* (download the free pdf version at [www.forbiddengate.com](http://www.forbiddengate.com)) helpful during this discussion as it provides several examples of biblical cities that came under siege of evil supernaturalism as a result of specific corporate human activity.

4. According to *Forbidden Gates* (and other works by Tom and Nita Horn), a partnership or contract can actually be entered into between human and non-human governments. This theology is based in part on the ancient “Divine Council” records as well as Judaic and biblical literature concerning the “Kosmos” or domain where kosmokrators (rulers of darkness who work in and through human counterparts) command spirits of lesser rank until every level of human government is touched by this influence. It is this dominion, not flesh and blood that seeks a world system under Satan’s control (see Ephesians 6). Do you believe such spiritual influences operate within your state or nation? At the federal level? If so, why?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may find the following excerpt from Tom Horn’s book [Apollyon Rising 2012](#) to be helpful here:

I have to admit that, when writing this book, it was difficult to resist the temptation to compile at length the names, dates, and organizations that form the goals of the ruling elite. Having accumulated thousands of pages of research material concerning the CFR, the Trilateral Commission, the Bohemians, the Masons, the Bilderbergers, and other Illuminatus subgroups, my original intention included several chapters on the memberships past and present of the largely unknown powers working behind public affairs. In the end, I determined that enough of this type material is already available to the public, and that this book would be better served in raising awareness—beyond the machinations of financiers and occult ideologues who direct global institutions—by showing that behind their matrix of illusion—which most citizens perceive as reality—is an arena of evil supernaturalism under which these human “conduits” are willingly organized. In more than thirty important biblical texts, the Greek New Testament employs the term **kosmos**, which describes an invisible order or “government behind government.” It is here that human ego, separated from God, becomes hostile to the service of mankind while viewing people as commodities to be manipulated in the ministration of fiendish ambition. To some, the origins of this phenomenon began in the distant past, when a “fire in the minds” of angels caused Lucifer to exalt himself above the good of God’s creation. The once-glorified spirit was driven mad by an unequivocal thirst to rule, conquer, and dominate. His fall spawned similar lust between his followers, which continues today among human agents of dark power who guard a privileged “cause-and-



effect” relationship between diabolical forces and the opportunity for lordship over societies.

The objectives of the secret orders and the very real forces they serve are seldom perceived by citizens of democratic societies who choose to believe national officials actually rule their countries and represent their interests. Yet according to sacred texts, not only does an active collaboration exist between unregenerate social architects and fallen angels, but politicians in particular are vulnerable to “principalities and powers.” According to well-known exorcist Gabriele Amorth, who has performed more than seventy thousand official exorcisms, “Evil exists in politics, quite often in fact. The devil loves to take over...those who hold political office.” As a result, it is not difficult to see how “fleshy gloves” such as U.S. presidents may be unaware of their role as chess pieces on a terrestrial game board sliding in and out of position as they are moved by “the god of this world” toward the phantasmogoric end game (see 2 Corinthians 4:4). If researchers like Dr. Monteith are correct, and world governments are to this day influenced by such dark angelic powers, the elite who head the current push to establish a New World Order are directly connected with an antichrist system whether they know it or not. With vivid testimony to this, Satan offered to Jesus all the power and glory of the kingdoms of this world. He said, “All this power [control] will I give thee, and the glory of them [earthly cities]: for that is delivered unto me: and to whomsoever I will I give it. If thou therefore wilt worship me, all shall be thine” (Luke 4:6–7).

Signs and evidence of such supernatural involvement in the current move towards worldwide totalitarian government have been increasing in political commentary, occult symbolism, and numerological “coincidences” over the past decade. As public opinion is engineered toward final acceptance of the international subordination, we would expect to see these “mirrors of occult involvement” continue. Recently, there have been so many semiotic messages (visible signs and audible references that communicate subliminal ideas) in the open that it is starting to feel as if the “gods” are mocking us, challenging whether or not we will willingly admit their involvement. This has been exponentially true since the election of U.S. President Barack Hussein Obama, the “President of the World,” according to news services around the planet. While the grandiose title “President of the World”—granted Obama by euphoric crowds on election night—remains to be prophetic, the glorified ideal behind it reflects the global hunger for and movement toward the arrival of “the one”

who represents the invisible agencies mentioned above and who, for a while, will appear to be the world's answer man.

5. On page 82 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors bring up the question of “inner space” as opposed to external physical reality concerning the “Quantum Gravity Treatment of the Angel Density Problem.” This is an ancient argument that asks “how many angels can fit on the head of a pin” and raises the associated philosophical-metaphysical-physics issue of how many demons can possess an individual. When extrapolated to another question – how many demons can occupy a state or a nation – the figures become mind boggling and downright scary. Do you believe there are places on earth where, as a result of the density of fallen angels, darkness is “as thick as mud”? If so, what nations or areas of the world would you believe this has been evident within historically (for instance during Nazi Germany) or is true today, and in what way has it (or does it) affect those populations or governments?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to download for review or discussion the scientific paper “Quantum Gravity Treatment of the Angel Density Problem” for the Royal Institute of Technology in Stockholm, Sweden by Dr. Anders Sandberg at the following link:
- <http://www.nada.kth.se/~asa/Angels/angels.pdf>
- b) In this same section of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors discuss how “habitable space” and spatial occupancy—the amount of substance (or demons, in this case) that can fit into a specific area—are different between material and spiritual dimensions and that even the ancients pondered these concepts of advanced physics, space-time, quantum gravity densities, relativity theory, and hyperdimensional materiality (though the ancients knew nothing of these terms), allowing for different maximal density of “beings” within what otherwise appears in the physical world to be the same “space.” The teacher may want to point out how many of the best researchers of so-called “alien abduction phenomenon” likewise concluded that ufo-ism and abduction activity closely parallels historic and biblical demonic activity, both in the sense of their amorphous “materiality” as well as space-time relations to our four-dimensional reality (length, width, height, and time). The following quotes from Tom Horn’s book *Nephilim Stargates* may provide some talking points on this subject:

Whatever has been going on for centuries that defines the UFO/Alien phenomena is ultimately connected to the history of angels, demons, fairies, incubi, succubi, and the gods of mythology. Again we note Jacques Vallée drawing strong similarity between occupants of UFOs and supernatural entities:

I had shown in *Passport to Magonia* that contact with ufonauts was only a modern extension of the age-old tradition of contact with nonhuman consciousness in the form of angels, demons, elves, and sylphs. (Vallée 159)

John Keel echoes this scholarship in *Operation Trojan Horse*, where he states:

Demonology is not just another crackpot-ology. It is the ancient and scholarly study of the monsters and demons who have seemingly coexisted with man throughout history. . . . The manifestations and occurrences described in this imposing literature are similar, if not entirely identical, to the UFO phenomenon itself. Victims of demonomania (possession) suffer the very same medical and emotional symptoms as the UFO contactees. . . . The Devil and his demons can, according to the literature, manifest themselves in almost any form and can physically imitate anything from angels to horrifying monsters with glowing eyes. Strange objects and entities materialize and dematerialize in these stories, just as the UFOs and their splendid occupants appear and disappear, walk through walls, and perform other supernatural feats. (Keel 192)

Later in *Operation Trojan Horse*, Keel spoke of the intangible nature of the aliens and their craft as "transmogrifications tailoring themselves to our ability to understand" (Keel 266). Dr. John Mack not only made the same conclusion—that the UFO-nauts illustrate behavior resembling historical demons—but that the intangible nature of such is illustrated in how ETs traverse dimensional gateways, portals, and stargates, such as we have focused on in this study.

In *Abduction*, Mack wrote:

Quite a few abductees have spoken to me of their sense that at least some of their experiences are not occurring within the physical space-time dimensions of the universe as we comprehend it. They speak of

aliens breaking through from another dimension, through a 'slit' or 'crack' in some sort of barrier [gateway, portal], entering our world from 'beyond the veil.' Abductees, some of whom have little education to prepare them to explain about such abstractions or odd dislocations, will speak of the collapse of space-time that occurs during their experiences. They experience the aliens, indeed their abductions themselves, as happening in another reality, although one that is as powerfully actual to them as—or more so than—the familiar physical world. (Mack 402)

6. In the last few pages of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors discuss the difference between the two Greek terms: 1) *daimonizomai*, meaning “to be demonized”; and 2) *echon daimonion*, which means “having a demon,” which can actually denote a person who possesses the demon, not the other way around (again, this concept can be expanded to cities, states and nations that pursue demonic aspiration). After having read this chapter in *Forbidden Gates*, have you (or do you) known a person that fits either of these categories? What were their symptoms?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Lead the class in a general discussion on these two concepts (*daimonizomai* and *echon daimonion*) and include questions about whether:
- 1) Some churches or groups are too quick in claiming particular activity is demonic.
  - 2) In the course of diagnosing possession, victim/patients should be medically or mentally evaluated.
  - 3) If a person is determined to be under control of demons, what spiritual authorities are qualified to deal with the issue / how should the church provide deliverance.
- b) Conclude this class by reaffirming the believer’s authority of wicked spiritual forces and praying with any members that may believe they have need of forgiveness or deliverance.

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK FOUR

(Read chapter four of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. On page 77 of Forbidden Gates, the authors recite a story told by Dr. Robert Cornwall in the 1970s at Redwood Family Campmeeting in Northern California. Do you think this account actually happened, or was it simply a figment of an overactive imagination if not an outright lie?
2. The second issue raised by the Cornwall story has to do with “legal” rights, which Satan may possess over people and property. The authors claim that to this day the Devil maintains limited jurisdiction as the “god of this world” and can, essentially, enter into binding agreements with people and institutions creating a covenant relationship including specific rights. Do you agree or disagree with this premise?
3. In addition to individual property surrendered to Satanic dominion, the authors claim entire geographies can, through specific activity or judgments, come under control of evil supernaturalism, presumably through a majority or collective agreement within human populations that stands at odds with moral law. If you agree, in what way do you imagine this process works?
4. According to Forbidden Gates (and other works by Tom and Nita Horn), a partnership or contract can actually be entered into between human and non-human governments. This theology is based in part on the ancient “Divine Council” as well as Judaic and biblical literature concerning the “Kosmos” or domain where kosmokrators (rulers of darkness who work in and through human counterparts) command spirits of lesser rank until every level of human government is touched by this influence. It is this dominion, not flesh and blood that seeks a world system under Satan’s control (see Ephesians 6). Do you believe such spiritual influences operate within your state or nation? At the federal level?
5. On page 82 of Forbidden Gates, the authors bring up the question of “inner space” as opposed to external physical reality concerning the “Quantum Gravity Treatment of the Angel Density Problem.” This is an ancient argument that asks “how many angels can fit on the head of a pin” and raises associated philosophical-metaphysical-physics issue of how many demons can possess an individual. When extrapolated to another question – how many demons can occupy a state or a nation – the figures become mind boggling and downright scary. Do you believe there are places on earth where, as a result of the density of fallen angels, darkness is “as thick as mud”? If so, what nations or areas of the world would you believe this has been evident historically or is true today, and in what way has it been manifested?
6. In the last few pages of Forbidden Gates, the authors discuss the difference between the two Greek terms: 1) daimonizomai, meaning “to be demonized”; and 2) echon daimonion, which means “having a demon,” and can actually denote a person who possesses the demon, not the other way around (again, this concept can be expanded to cities, states and nations that pursue demonic aspiration). After having read this chapter in Forbidden Gates, have you or do you know a person that fits either of these categories? What are the symptoms?

# LESSON #5

## DAIMONIONS INSIDE THE CHURCH

Have the study group read chapter five of *FORBIDDEN GATES* before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSE:** 2 Chronicles 18:18-21

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #5 continues Demonology 101 by recognizing how even the organized church can be fertile ground for invasive spirits intent on sidelining effective ministry. As a result, we must be vigilant at all times.

**OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter five of *Forbidden Gates* opens with an important insight not always discussed in books or studies on Spiritual Warfare. According to the authors, the SUPERIOR enemies the Church faces are not always those that come from without, but those from within institutionalize Christianity – what the authors call “demons of religion.” Did you find this idea to be disturbing, and do you agree? If so, in what ways do you believe these religious spirits manifest themselves within organized religion?

- 1. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* held executive level positions in the largest evangelical institution in the world for decades, during which time they pastored and were also involved in exorcism (deliverance ministry). On pages 91-92 they state that the most powerful forms of demonism they encountered during that time did not, however, come from the few examples of authentic possession they witnessed, but rather from “demons of religion” manifest in some who held positions of authority inside the organization. What do you think of this troubling assertion?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

a) Before discussing how evil supernaturalism can operate inside religious institutions or persons, read the opening statement on page 91 of *Forbidden Gates*, which begins “*While the pages of nearly all books on spiritual warfare abound with examples of people becoming possessed or demonized by entities as a result of **deviant perversion, drug use, violence, occultism** (as in the case of the young man in the previous chapter), or other depravations of **immoral behavior, including infidelity and witchcraft...**” and ask the class how they believe these and similar examples can actually lead to a person coming under demonic influence:*

1. Immorality / perversion?
2. Drug use?
3. Violence?
4. Occultism / witchcraft?

b) Depending on the class, the teacher may or may not wish to enter the sticky related line of study concerning whether *children* can be affected by such surroundings. A contentious discussion in some theological circles involves whether children “under the age of accountability” can be possessed by demons. Verses such as Mark 9:17, Mt 15:22; 17:14-21 are often cited, but there is dispute about how old these children in the Bible actually were. In addition, some Catholic priests have stated in the past that Satanists can make a pact with the devil that ensures their children will join them in hell, while some evangelical churches have been known to actually “test” babies for possession by placing them on the floor next to a Bible and watching their reactions. These are considered extremist points of view, but in some class settings this may be helpful in establishing the real perimeters for a solid study of demonism.

c) Some of history’s most famous cases of demon possession include: (from Wikipedia)

**Anneliese Michel** (September 21, 1952 – July 1, 1976) was a German Catholic woman who was said to be possessed by demons and subsequently underwent an exorcism. Two motion pictures, *The Exorcism of Emily Rose* and *Requiem*, are loosely based on Michel's story.

In 1975, when Anneliese Michel was 23 years old, an older woman who accompanied her on a pilgrimage concluded that Michel was suffering from demonic possession because Michel was unable to walk past a certain icon of Jesus Christ and refused to drink the water of a holy spring. An exorcist in a nearby town examined Michel and believed she was suffering from demonic possession. The bishop issued permission to perform the rite of exorcism according to the *Rituale Romanum* of 1614.

After 10 months of unsuccessful psychiatric treatments, they gave up on medical treatment and chose to rely solely on the exorcisms for healing. The rites of exorcism were performed over the course of about ten months in 1976. A total of sixty-seven exorcism sessions were held, one or two each week, some lasting up to four hours. At some point she began talking increasingly about dying to atone for the wayward youth of the day and the apostate priests of the modern church, and refused to eat. Though she had received treatment for epilepsy, by this time, at her own request, doctors were no longer being consulted. This was because Anneliese mentioned the "demons" to the doctors, explaining that they started to give her orders. The doctors seemed unable to help, and Anneliese lost hope that medicine was going to be able to cure her of her problems.

On July 1, 1976, Anneliese Michel died in her sleep. The autopsy report stated that her death resulted from the malnutrition and dehydration due to almost a year of semi-starvation during which time the rites of exorcism were also performed.

A prosecutor then conducted an investigation after which the two exorcists and Anneliese's parents were charged with negligence causing death because the doctors said she was an epileptic and a psychotic. The priests produced recordings of various exorcisms they had performed, during which they said they could distinguish the voices of two demons in the process of arguing, wondering which of them would leave the body of Anneliese first. Anneliese's parents and both priests were sentenced to six months in prison.

**George Lukins, also known as the Yatton demoniac**, was an individual famous for his alleged demonic possession and the subsequent exorcism



that occurred when he was aged forty-four; his case occasioned great controversy in England. The Rev. Joseph Easterbrook, the Anglican vicar of Temple Church, was summoned on Saturday, 31 May 1778, by Mrs. Sarah Barber, a woman who was travelling in the village of Mendip, Yatton, in the county of Somerset. The woman told the pastor that she came across a man by the name of George Lukins, a tailor and common carrier by profession, who had a strange malady "in which he sang and screamed in various sounds, some of which did not resemble a human voice; and declared, doctors could do him no service." Mrs. Barber, who formerly resided in Yatton, attested to the clergyman that Lukins had an extraordinary good character and attended services of worship, where he received the Church sacraments. However, for the past eighteen years, he had been subject to atypical fits, which Lukins believed resulted from a supernatural slap which knocked him down while he was acting in a Christmas pageant. George Lukins was consequently taken under the care of Dr. Smith, an eminent surgeon of Wrington, among many other physicians, who in vain, tried to help George Lukins; moreover, after his twenty week stay at St. George's Hospital, the medical community there pronounced him incurable. Members of the community began to think that Mr. Lukins was bewitched and he himself declared that he himself was possessed by seven demons, who could only be driven out by seven clergymen. Rev. Easterbrook contacted Methodist ministers in connexion with Rev. John Wesley who agreed to pray for George Lukins:

"Some time ago I had a letter requesting me to make one of the seven ministers to pray over George Lukins. I cried out before God, "Lord, I am not fit for such a work; I have not faith to encounter a demoniac." It was powerfully applied, "God in this thy might." The day before we were to meet, I went to see Lukins, and found such faith, that I could then encounter the seven devils which he said tormented him. I did not doubt but deliverance would come. Suffice to say, when we met, the Lord heard prayer, and delivered the poor man."— Rev. John Valton

An account of the exorcism was published in the Bristol Gazette. The newspaper reported that George Lukins, during his alleged possession, claimed that he was the devil, made barking noises, sung an inverted Te Deum, and was very violent. In light of these claims, on Friday, 13 June

1778, seven clergymen, including Rev. Joseph Easterbrook, accompanied George Lukins to the vestry at Temple Church, where they performed an exorcism on the man, which included hymn singing and prayer. The deliverance concluded when the demons were allegedly cast out using the Trinitarian formula; the clergymen commanded the demons to return to hell and George Lukins then exclaimed "Blessed Jesus!", praised God, recited the Lord's prayer, and then thanked the Methodist and Anglican clergymen. Rev. Easterbrook, when recording the events under the patronage of Rev. John Wesley, stated that the account would be doubted in this modern era of skepticism, but pointed to "the scriptures, and other authentic history, of ancient as well as modern times" to buttress what he felt was a valid case of demonic possession.[19] An article in *The Gentleman's Magazine and Historical Chronicle* criticized the account, stating that Lukins actually suffered from "epilepsy and St. Vitus's dance." Dr. Feriar, a medical demonologist, criticized George Lukins as an impostor masquerading as a demoniac. Nevertheless, after the exorcism, George Lukins was described as calm and happy. Following this case, several pieces of literature were printed on George Lukins, thus popularising his alleged case of diabolical possession and deliverance, despite the original design to keep the case a secret.

**Robbie Mannheim** (also known as Roland Doe; born circa 1936) is the pseudonym given by author Thomas B. Allen to an anonymous individual most notably known for allegedly being possessed and later exorcised during his childhood in the late 1940s. The alleged events which were reported in the media of the time and the subsequent claims surrounding those events went on to inspire the 1971 novel *The Exorcist* by William Peter Blatty and the 1973 film of the same name, as well as Thomas B. Allen's 1993 nonfiction account *Possessed*, a second edition of it in 1999, and the 2000 film by the same name, based on Allen's book.

- 2. From Scripture, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* (page 92) note how 1) a lying spirit filled the mouths of the prophets in the Old Testament; 2) in the New Testament Jesus confronted an unclean spirit in the synagogue; and 3) Jesus tied the power of Satan to leaders of the synagogue. Do you believe these biblical examples were isolated incidents or that they mirror how evil supernaturalism actively seeks entry into church life and ministry?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Lead the class in a discussion of these 3 areas in which the Bible offers insight regarding the influence of evil supernaturalism within religious institutions (and make the point that this is why we need wisdom within the Church):
1. **“A lying spirit filled the mouths of the prophets”** – Discuss the role of evil spirits and false prophecy, doctrines of devils, how even a person calling themselves a minister of God may actually be (knowingly or unknowingly) an agent of deception. Thus we are to be as the Bereans were who received the message of the Gospel with great enthusiasm but “examined the Scriptures every day to see if what Paul said was true” (Acts 17:11-12).
  2. **Jesus confronted an unclean spirit within the congregation (Mark 1:23)** – Discuss how not only preachers and prophets, but congregants can reside under the influence of deceptive spirits. The best antidote for this presence is solid preaching / teaching, in which Christ-likeness and brotherly love is nurtured, which spoils the strategy of divisive spirits.
  3. **Many of the leaders of the religious institution were puppets of the most powerful Satanic influence according to Jesus** – Read the following verses or have class members read them and make the point that the most powerful and descriptive language ever used by Jesus regarding those who were under the influence of Satan was reserved for the priests of the temple (John 8:44; Matthew 23:1-33).
- b) It is important during discussion of the three points above to emphasize that this disclosure – how evil spirits may operate within persons inside religious institutions including prophets, congregants, and priests – is not for the purpose of “finger pointing” or blaming others for particular problems or failings within the institution. In fact, that would only be to add power to the very spirits we seek to overcome! The goal here is simply to be aware that a hidden presence is always seeking entry into church life and that we are to “be sober, be vigilant; because [our] adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour” (1 Peter 5:8)

c) Ask the class to describe in what way, if any, they remember to pray for their pastor, Christian family, and even denominational leaders, that they will triumph over those invisible powers that seek their destruction. Perhaps as an example, read Luke 22:31-32 where Jesus told Peter, " Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat: But I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not: and when thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren."

**3. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* point out how some Catholic and Evangelical leaders have verbalized their knowledge of evil supernaturalism within their institutions. Some of those who were quite verbal met untimely deaths. Is it possible that a conspiracy exists among certain church leaders to cover up this diabolical reality? Or is this simply too "conspiracy minded" to believe that such solidarity actually exists among certain human and non-human church leadership?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

a) From the references made in *Forbidden Gates* concerning some of those who have spoken out on demonic influences within institutionalized Christianity, the author point to specific individuals including Father John F. O'Connor, who believed the path for the rise of the Antichrist was being paved among Vatican insiders. Not all of O'Connor's presentations are available anymore, but certain homilies can still be found online such as "The Reign of the Antichrist" at YouTube here: <http://video.google.com/videoplay?docid=-8719609350720270918#>

b) Information on the murder of Father Kunz, whom good friend Malachi Martin believed was murdered because he was planning to disclose a connection between Church leaders and sexual abuse as part of Satanic activity within the Catholic church, can be found at such sites as:

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Murder\\_of\\_Alfred\\_Kunz](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Murder_of_Alfred_Kunz)

<http://chucknowlen.com/kunz.htm>

<http://inatoday.com/newhopefrk.htm>

- c) Finally, the excerpt below from Tom Horn's book [Apollyon Rising 2012](#) may be helpful during class discussion on the subject:

Ten years earlier, before "something pushed him" and Malachi Martin fell and later died, he had become increasingly candid about what he said was pedophilic Satanism among certain cardinals and other clergy in league with a secret Masonic diabolicus that began following the "enthronement of the fallen Archangel Lucifer" in the Roman Catholic Citadel on June 29, 1963.

In *The Keys of This Blood*, Martin wrote:

Most frighteningly for John Paul, he had come up against the irremovable presence of a malign strength in his own Vatican and in certain bishops' chanceries. It was what knowledgeable Churchmen called the "superforce." Rumors, always difficult to verify, tied its installation to the beginning of Pope Paul VI's reign in 1963. Indeed Paul had alluded somberly to "the smoke of Satan which has entered the Sanctuary" ...an oblique reference to an enthronement ceremony by Satanists in the Vatican.

Martin had concealed greater detail of this luciferic "enthronement ceremony by Satanists in the Vatican" in his novel, *Windswept House*:

The Enthronement of the Fallen Archangel Lucifer was effected within the Roman Catholic Citadel on June 29, 1963; a fitting date for the historic promise about to be fulfilled. As the principal agents of this Ceremonial well knew, Satanist tradition had long predicted that the Time of the Prince would be ushered in at the moment when a Pope would take the name of the Apostle Paul [Pope Paul VI]. That requirement—the signal that the Availing Time had begun—had been accomplished just eight days before with the election of the latest Peter-in-the-Line.

Martin stated publicly on more than one occasion that the enthronement of Lucifer in Rome was based on fact, and that to facilitate the black magic, a parallel ceremony was conducted simultaneously in the United

States in Charleston, South Carolina. The reason this location was selected has remained obscure to many, but given what Malachi said about the Masonic connection, it makes sense that South Carolina was chosen: It is the site of the first Supreme Council of the Scottish Rite Freemasonry in the United States, called “the Mother Lodge of the World,” where in 1859, champion of Luciferian dogma for the Masonic-Illuminatus, Albert Pike became Grand Commander of the Supreme Council, where he served the Order of the Quest until his death in Washington DC on April 2, 1892.

In addition, Charleston, at the thirty-third parallel, was perfect for such an event, according to the logic of former Sirhan Sirhan attorney, Day Williams, because, “If a life is taken close to the...33rd Parallel, this fits with the Masons’ demonic mythology in which they demonstrate their worldly power by spilling human blood at a predetermined locale.”

Martin provided additional reasoning for the South Carolina location:

Such unobtrusive elements as the Pentagram and the black candles and the appropriate draperies could be part of the Ceremonial in Rome. But other Ruberics—the Bowl of Bones and the Ritual Din, for example, the sacrificial animals and the victim—would be too much. There would have to be a Parallel Enthronement. A Concelebration could be accomplished with the same effect by the Brethren in an Authorized Targeting Chapel. Provided all the participants in both locations “targeted” every element of the Event on the Roman Chapel, then the Event in its fullness would be accomplished specifically in the target area. It would all be a matter of unanimity of hearts, identity of intention and perfect synchronization of words and actions between the Targeting Chapel and the Target Chapel. The living wills and the thinking minds of the Participants concentrated on the specific Aim of the Prince would transcend all distance.

When John F. McManus, for The New American, June 9, 1997, asked Father Martin if the Black Mass in South Carolina had actually happened, it led to an enlightening Q and A:

**McManus:** Your book begins with a vivid description of a sacrilegious “Black Mass” held in 1963 in Charleston, South Carolina. Did this really happen?

**Martin:** Yes it did. And the participation by telephone of some high officials of the church in the Vatican is also a fact. The young female who was forced to be a part of this satanic ritual is very much alive and, happily, has been able to marry and lead a normal life. She supplied details about the event....

**McManus:** In addition...you depict numerous other cardinals and bishops in a very bad light. Are these characterizations based on fact?

**Martin:** Yes, among the cardinals and the hierarchy there are satanists, homosexuals, anti-papists, and cooperators in the drive for world rule.

Whether Martin was killed and his death covered up for revealing the Masonic-Illuminati scheme to use the Catholic Church as a launching pad for a luciferic novus ordo seclorum may never be known. One year before he died, however, Martin’s very good friend, Father Alfred Kunz, was brutally murdered in his church in Dane, Wisconsin. Kunz had been investigating the same Satanism among “priests” that Martin had warned about, and had told Martin in the weeks before his murder that he feared for his life.

When Kunz was found with his throat slit, Martin went public that the “luciferians” had killed him because he was getting ready to blow the lid off their conspiracy. Like O’Connor had, Kunz and Martin believed the Catholic Church had been specifically targeted for infiltration by members of this Illuminati-Masonic “Superforce” because of the church’s geopolitical influence in the world. In the Q and A with McManus, Martin even added that part of the reasoning behind this choice was:

The Catholic Church has its own diplomatic corps of ambassadors posted in the highly industrialized nations of the world. There are 180 nations that have sent their own ambassadors to the Vatican.

No other church commands this attention. Those who are working for the New World Order must bring this unique organization under their control.

Finally from the interview:

**McManus:** Your book claims that subversive influences in the highest clerical positions of the Church are working to bring it into the New World Order. What do you mean by “New World Order?”

**Martin:** In its completely planned form...the governments of the world will be directed by those who have climbed their way into the capstone.

**McManus:** What do you mean by the “capstone”?

**Martin:** The underlying force I have written about in Windswept House is structured very much like a pyramid. It is wide at the bottom where many individuals work for its goals and hope to be elevated to a higher place. There are fewer and fewer inhabitants in each of the ascending steps in the structure. Only a very few form its ultimate directorate, the capstone of the pyramid.

Long before popular author Dan Brown (The Da Vinci Code, Angels and Demons, The Lost Symbol) characterized an Illuminati scheme to destroy the Vatican, Malachi Martin had pointed to the familiar pyramid symbolism from the Great Seal of the United States associated with the New World Order and had accurately directed investigators toward the conspirators, as well as to the prophetic references of the novus ordo seclorum as arriving when the capstone would be figuratively filled and fitted atop the unfinished pyramid. Whether Martin perceived the year that the conspirator’s plan would reach its zenith is uncertain, but the occult elite have always had their date, which, as the reader has discovered, is cleverly encoded alongside the other details of the complete cipher in the Great Seal of the United States.



- d) Besides Catholic priests, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* point to a letter by David Wilkerson, which speaks of similar demonic activity within Evangelical churches. That letter can be viewed in full online here:

<http://www.believersweb.org/view.cfm?ID=735>

- 4. Chapter Five of *Forbidden Gates* includes a biting excerpt from an article by Tom Horn (*New Testament Theology According To The Vampire Lestat*) that speaks of the megalomania that is typical of many false church leaders. The language from this article emphasizes how such false persons attempt to suppress their true motivation by emulating sincerity. Have you ever seen an example of this?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to go point by point on the following issues raised on pages 101-102 in *Forbidden Gates* related to the “tools” false apostles will use in developing the persona they wish to sell to audiences:
1. They master dialectics
  2. Practice vocal projection on stage
  3. Use expressiveness
  4. Study improvisation
  5. Use emotional drama
  6. Recite classical texts and scripture
  7. Include performing arts, singing, etc
- b) The teacher should point out that each of these “tools” are effective and clever because they are the same things that resonate from true preachers, yet lack the “anointing” and power of the Gospel that truly brings people to conversion, healing, and restoration. This brings us back to points made earlier in this class that “we shall know them by their fruits” and emphasizes where our focus should be – on what type fruit one bears, not on how good of an entertainer they are. Have the class read and discuss what the true fruits of the spirit are from Galatians 5:22-23.

c) “Ye shall know them by their fruits” is powerfully illustrated on page 104 where the excerpt concludes with a statement about church authorities that took advantage of an old woman by keeping the value of her home while waiting for her to die so that they wouldn’t have to pay the \$35,000 they had agreed to pay her. Tom Horn mentions an often overlooked part of scripture when he mentions how she “will rise up in judgment” against them. Explain to the class that this is based on such verses as Luke 11: 31-32.

**5. Given the fact that deceptive spirits actively seek to invest themselves in church activity and persons, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* emphasize the need for believers to be alert and to understand the difference between legitimate and illegitimate ministry activity. Write down the ways in which you believe this can be accomplished.**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

a) In Matthew 7:15-20 Jesus says false apostles and works can be “known” by their fruits. Ask the class to weigh in on the meaning of this verse. In what ways can it be obvious that a ministry teaching is false (i.e. it seeks to elevate men instead of Christ; it contradicts the clear teaching of Scripture; it appeals to lusts for power and wealth, etc).

b) The authors also briefly mention certain modern “heresies” including the Doctrine of Inclusion and Dominionism. Ask the class if they are familiar with these church teachings and why the authors of *Forbidden Gates* consider them to be dangerous. There are numerous scholarly works online detailing the adoption of these doctrines the teacher may wish to research, including an article by The Dallas Morning News titled “Devil may go to heaven, says beleaguered bishop” archived here:  
<http://www.religionnewsblog.com/3295/devil-may-go-to-heaven-says-beleaguered-bishop>

c) The authors of *Forbidden Gates* follow by saying that the more dangerous “doctrines of devils” are the subtle, “smaller lucifers” that grow from selfishness within congregations that slowly chip away at the foundations of the church. This could include persons who oppose church support for missions, preferring to use the tithe and donations income received by the

organization for things that might benefit them personally. Can members of the class think of other examples?

6. **On pages 104-105 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors mention how “judgment must begin at the house of God” (1 Peter 4:17). In upcoming classes the issues of transhumanism and human enhancement (see the subtitle of *Forbidden Gates*) will illustrate the increasing need for spiritual discernment in the church concerning new doctrines related to human-transforming technology and the resulting ideological battle for the mind of a generation. As we approach this new paradigm, in what way will current tried-and-true methods of discernment continue to be valid?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) If time allows, the teacher may ask what the class thought when reading the closing statement (page 105) of chapter five in *Forbidden Gates*: “We are in a battle—a spiritual war for the minds and souls of a generation—and frankly, the time has come for new Martin Luthers to nail their theses on some institution doors where echon daimonion may have become so deeply entrenched as to have literally forged the latter-day “habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird” (Revelation 18:2).” Do you believe an end times “false church” will rise that is the “cage” of every unclean and hateful spirit (bird)?
- b) End this class with a general discussion about the need for each of us to be vigilant against deception, to weigh especially “new doctrine” as it emerges, to “test the spirits” (1 John 4:1) whether they are of God, and to guard our own hearts as well, “lest being lifted up with pride [we] fall into the condemnation of the devil” (1 Timothy 3:6).

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK FIVE

(Read chapter five of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. The authors of Forbidden Gates held executive level positions in the largest evangelical institution in the world for decades, during which time they pastored and were also involved in exorcism (deliverance ministry). On pages 91-92 they state that the most powerful forms of demonism they encountered during that time did not, however, come from the few examples of authentic possession they witnessed, but rather from “demons of religion” manifest in some of those who held positions of authority inside the organization. What do you think of this troubling assertion?
2. From Scripture, the authors of Forbidden Gates (page 92) note how 1) a lying spirit filled the mouths of the prophets in the Old Testament; 2) in the New Testament Jesus confronted an unclean spirit in the synagogue; and 3) Jesus tied the power of Satan to leaders of the synagogue. Do you believe these biblical examples were isolated incidents or that they mirror how evil supernaturalism actively seeks entry into church life and ministry?
3. The authors of Forbidden Gates point out how some Catholic and Evangelical leaders have verbalized their knowledge of evil supernaturalism within their institutions. Some of those who were quite verbal met untimely deaths. Is it possible that a conspiracy exists among certain church leaders to cover up this diabolical reality? Or is this simply too “conspiracy minded” to believe that such solidarity actually exists among certain human and non-human church leadership?
4. Chapter Five of Forbidden Gates includes a biting excerpt from an article by Tom Horn (New Testament Theology According To The Vampire Lestat) that speaks of the megalomania that is typical of many false church leaders. The language from this article emphasizes how such false persons attempt to suppress their true motivation by emulating sincerity. Have you ever seen an example of this?
5. Given the fact that deceptive spirits actively seek to invest themselves in church activity and persons, the authors of Forbidden Gates emphasize the need for believers to be alert and to understand the difference between legitimate and illegitimate ministry activity. Write down the ways in which you believe this can be accomplished.
6. On pages 104-105 of Forbidden Gates, the authors mention how “judgment must begin at the house of God” (1 Peter 4:17). In upcoming classes the issues of transhumanism and human enhancement (see the subtitle of Forbidden Gates) will illustrate the increasing need for spiritual discernment in the church concerning new doctrines related to human-transforming technology and the resulting ideological battle for the mind of a generation. As we approach this new paradigm, in what way will current tried-and-true methods of discernment continue to be valid?

# LESSON #6

## TEMPTATION, INFLUENCE, OBSESSION, DEMONIZATION, POSSESSION

Have the study group read chapter six of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSE:** Mark 3:23-24

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #6 is to establish the limits of what demons can and cannot do and the methods by which they seek entry into our minds and bodies.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter six of *Forbidden Gates* opens with one of the thorniest questions in Christianity: can a Christian be demon possessed? While the majority of evangelical Christians would shout a resounding “no,” there are a number of believers that argue otherwise. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* do not believe actual Christian possession is possible, but do you agree or disagree, and why. The answer to this difficult question can be helpful in understanding what the limits of evil supernaturalism are, as well as defining the tools they use to intrude themselves into a Christian’s life.

- 1. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* open the sixth chapter with a question about whether a born again believer can be demon possessed. They say a true Christian cannot. Do you agree or disagree?**

### **TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Depending on the teachers viewpoint concerning this question, the issues raised by the authors on pages 107-108 should provide for lively classroom discussion:

1. The authors state there are no instances of “possession” of believers anywhere in the Bible.
2. Not a single verse in the Scripture even warns of the possibility.
3. There are zero examples in the life of Jesus Christ and the early church of demons being cast out of Christians.

b) The authors then follow with the paragraph below (pg 108). Have the class read and discuss the meaning behind each of these verses:

What we do find in Scripture regarding the inner space of believers is that our body “is the temple of the Holy Ghost, which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own” **(1 Corinthians 6:19)**. In fact, John writes that “he that is begotten of God, keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not” **(1 John 5:18)**. Therefore, “What communion hath light with darkness? And what concord hath Christ with Belial.☐ And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, ‘I will dwell in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people’” **(2 Corinthians 6:14b–16)**. These and similar Scriptures verify for those who have the Holy Spirit residing within them that they are positively redeemed and sealed from the torment of diabolical possession. As John also certified, “If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed” **(John 8:36)**.

c) The author’s state that much confusion over this question is developed as a matter of semantics (the study of meaning within words, phrases, signs and symbols) and that actual examples of “demonization” are often blurred with “possession.”

2. **Notwithstanding the question of possession, the authors of Forbidden Gates believe Christians certainly can become “demonized.” Write down your feelings about this process as outlined in Forbidden Gates.**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

a) Read or have somebody read Ephesians 4:25-31. Point out in verse 27 that the phrase not to give “place” (Greek: *topos*) to the devil means to allow a foothold, opportunity, power, occasion for acting, or doorway into one’s personal space through which demonic strongholds can be established. Discuss the examples that Paul provides in which a devilish “foothold” can be created:

1. Lying
2. Anger
3. Wrath
4. Stealing
5. Bitterness
6. Clamor
7. Evil speaking (Greek *blasphēmia*: “to blaspheme, gossip, slander”)
8. Malice

b) The authors of *Forbidden Gates* also note how footholds by Satan can be established through such things as “fear,” which led Peter to deny Christ in Luke chapter 22 and that Jesus made clear was an effort by Satan to cause Peter to stumble (v. 31), and “greed” or lying—as illustrated in the story of Ananias and Sapphira in Acts chapter 5, where “Satan” (v. 3) filled the couple’s hearts to lie and to hold back a portion of money.

c) The point is then made that demonization of a Christian through these and similar weaknesses is usually gradual, where small decisions are made over an extended period of time during which the individual gives in to temptation, followed by ongoing and progressive surrender of territory within the mind and finally the flesh. Ask the class to provide examples of how this can happen and how examining our own lives can be helpful in stopping and correcting this dangerous activity.

**3. The authors then outline the steps (temptation, influence, obsession, demonization, possession) that can lead to demonization of a Christian or possession of an unsaved person. Have you or somebody you know wrestled with or overcame any of the advanced stages of this process (for instance obsession)?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

a) Discuss each of these steps with the class and provide examples of how Judas and/or other biblical or historical persons wrestled with these stages:

1. **Temptation:** The enemy discovers a weakness and appeals to it.
2. **Influence:** The individual entertains the idea and finally gives in to temptation. A foothold is established in the person's life, making it harder to resist the same or related activity in the future.
3. **Obsession:** The activity eventually becomes an unhealthy preoccupation and irresistible impulse leading to critical degrees of control over the individual. The power to resist is practically gone.
4. **Demonization:** Control over the individual by external power becomes substantial. What at one time was considered sinful and to be avoided is now an addiction. The person may no longer even recognize the tendency as immoral and little or no fortitude to cease participating in the activity remains.
5. **Possession:** This can occur if the individual turns his or her back on God so as to fully embrace carnality, surrendering the body and mind to Satan's control. The desire to resist invasion by discarnate supernaturalism is vacated.

4. **According to the authors of Forbidden Gates, the battle for control of these steps and doorways begins within the mind and moves outward toward physical fulfillment and ultimately through the stages from "temptation" to demonization or even possession. How frequently would you say this battle within the mind occurs? Minute by minute, hour by hour, daily, or only occasionally?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**



- a) Have the class read the following verses concerning the believer's mind and thought life and discuss the ramifications of each: Isaiah 26:3-4, Colossians 3:15, Philippians 4:8, 2 Corinthians 10:5.
- b) The author's of Forbidden Gates further describe how the Greek god Dionysus represented the incarnation of this struggle, which occurs within the mind in regard to temptation and surrender. Several key talking points from this section on Dionysus may be of interest to students including the connection between the Greek mythos and Freudian psychology. The teacher may benefit from the following weblinks on Sigmund Freud:

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sigmund\\_Freud](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sigmund_Freud)

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Id,\\_ego,\\_and\\_super-ego](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Id,_ego,_and_super-ego)

- c) In contrast to Freudian psychoanalysis, most Christian counselors prefer a form of counseling known as "Nouthetic" that can help in the battle for the mind. Dr. Jay Adams at the Institute for Nouthetic studies explains on his website <http://www.nouthetic.org/>:

While the name is new, the sort of counseling done by nouthetic counselors is not. From Biblical times onward, God's people have counseled nouthetically. The word itself is Biblical. It comes from the Greek noun nouthesia (verb: noutheteo). The word, used in the New Testament primarily by the apostle Paul, is translated "admonish, correct or instruct." This term, which probably best describes Biblical counseling, occurs in such passages as Romans 15:14: "I myself am convinced about you, my brothers, that you yourselves are full of goodness, filled with all knowledge, and competent to counsel one another." In that passage, the apostle was encouraging members of the Roman church to do informal, mutual counseling, something that all Christians today should learn, as well. On the other hand, the leaders of a congregation are to counsel nouthetically in a formal manner as a part of their ministry: "Now we ask you, brothers, to recognize those who labor among you, and manage you in the Lord, and counsel you."

Nouthetic Counseling Embraces Three Ideas

Because the New Testament term is larger than the English word "counsel," and because it doesn't carry any of the "freight" that is attached to the latter term, we have simply imported the Biblical term into English. In that way, the full force of the Biblical concept of counseling may be set forth while avoiding the many contradictory connotations surrounding the English one. The three ideas found in the word *nouthesia* are confrontation, concern, and change. To put it simply, *nouthetic* counseling consists of lovingly confronting people out of deep concern in order to help them make those changes that God requires.

By confrontation we mean that one Christian personally gives counsel to another from the Scriptures. He does not confront him with his own ideas or the ideas of others. He limits his counsel strictly to that which may be found in the Bible, believing that "All Scripture is breathed out by God and useful for teaching, for conviction, for correction and for disciplined training in righteousness in order to fit and fully equip the man from God for every good task." (2 Timothy 3:16,17) The *nouthetic* counselor believes that all that is needed to help another person love God and his neighbor as he should, as the verse above indicates, may be found in the Bible.

By concern we mean that counseling is always done for the benefit of the counselee. His welfare is always in view in Biblical counseling. The apostle Paul put it this way: "I am not writing these things to shame you, but to counsel you as my dear children." (1 Corinthians 4:14) Plainly, the familial nature of the word *noutheteo* appears in this verse. There is always a warm, family note to biblical counseling which is done among the saints of God who seek to help one another become more like Christ. Christians consider their counseling to be a part of the sanctification process whereby one Christian helps another get through some difficulty that is hindering him from moving forward in his spiritual growth.

By change we mean that counseling is done because there is something in another Christian's life that fails to meet the biblical requirements and that, therefore, keeps him from honoring God. All counseling -- Biblical or otherwise-- attempts change. Only Biblical counselors know what a counselee should become as the result of counseling: he should look

more like Christ. He is the Standard. Biblical counseling is done by Christians who are convinced that God is able to make the changes that are necessary as His Word is ministered in the power of the Spirit. It is their hope to help every interested church develop a nouthetic counseling program that will be a blessing to all of the members of that congregation. The importance of such counseling in churches is underscored by the words of Paul as he described his ministry in Ephesus: "Therefore, be alert, remembering that for three years, night and day, I didn't stop counseling each one of you with tears." (Acts 20:31) The regularity and intense nature of Paul's counsel during his three-year ministry at Ephesus is emphasized by these words. If Paul found it necessary to counsel nouthetically for that entire period, as he said, surely our churches need it, too.

5. **In what at first seems almost out of place in this discussion, the authors on pages 111-115 bring up the subject of Sparagmos ("torn apart") and Omophagia ("consumed raw") related to Dionysian rituals by the Bacchae women. The subject offers obvious blasphemy of the concept of Holy Communion, but can you think of other ways the message of communion, the mind, and spiritual warfare may have deeper meaning than the authors took time to explain in Forbidden Gates?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Ask the class to explain what communion means to them and why they participate in this ordinance.
- b) After general discussion, lead the class in consideration of the following points:
  1. "This do in remembrance of me" holds special meaning as we drink the cup and eat the bread in that we are to **reflect** on Christ's sacrifice, look forward to His return, **establish our mind or thought life** on fellowship with Him.
  2. Our participation in communion **shapes our identity** as a people.

3. Paul's warning in 1 Corinthians 11:27-32 to examine ourselves before communing **serves to stop the process of degeneration** mentioned earlier in this class where one may travel from "temptation" to demonization or even possession. God only knows how many times a person, before taking communion, thought of the behavior they had given into recently and repented of it before partaking of the bread and grape juice (or wine).
  4. Communion reminds us that **we are not alone in our struggle**. We commune as a family, one body; Paul writes, "For we being many are one bread, and one body: for we are all partakers of that one bread" (1 Cor. 10:17). Thus we draw strength from one another.
  5. Communion **also foreshadows the messianic banquet** feast described in Isaiah 25:6 and 1 Corinthians 11:26 ("until he comes"). It therefore points to the time when this earthly warfare will have ended and the final victory is ours.
  6. Finally, communion causes us **to evaluate our relationship with one another** as members of His body. Do we treat one another as Christ would have us? Do we have unresolved conflicts with fellow members of the church? This is an important aspect of this study when considering question #6 below.
6. In the final section of chapter six, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* ask "So who's in control of YOUR mind?" This question is followed by a statement of fact rarely defined inside church institutions – that **PEOPLE sometimes are the problem, not just the spirits operating behind them. Do you see a conflict between this statement and Ephesians 6:12?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to conclude today's class by evaluating the underlying premise in the following paragraphs from *Forbidden Gates* (pages 117-119) and by stressing that the lesson objective is to guard closely our minds and

activities so that we do not allow a “foothold” to be established within our lives by evil supernaturalism:

1. *God only knows how many resources of time, energy, and money have been exhausted over the centuries as a result of “churchgoers” like those Jesus warned of when He said, “Many will say to me in that day, ‘Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works?’ And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity” (Matthew 7:22–23).*
2. *...it becomes frighteningly clear that those who lack discipline in their thought life and who drift into “playing church” are actually playing with fire. We cannot help but shudder at some of the congregants we have known through the years who surrendered their minds to malevolent religious spirits and afterward left a trail of questions, division, and destruction in their wake. As the reader, perhaps you at one time also observed such damage to a congregation before the responsible party moved down the road to repeat the mayhem elsewhere.*
3. *Concerning these kind of troublesome individuals, Christians are often confused over what role, if any, spiritual warfare should play with respect to them—especially given that Ephesians 6:12 says “we wrestle not against flesh and blood.” Yet hermeneutically speaking, it is often impossible to discern exactly how “principalities and powers” engage the church in warfare without taking the human element into account—that sometimes people, because of the choices they make, are the problem, or least a part of it. Second Timothy 4:14–15 illustrates that this is not a contradiction of Ephesians 6:12, as the writer of Ephesians himself refers to a man named Alexander the coppersmith, saying that he “did me much evil: the Lord reward him according to his works: Of whom be thou ware also; for he hath greatly withstood our words [the Gospel].” The great commentator Matthew Henry says this text illustrates that “there is as much danger from false brethren, as from open enemies.” Though Paul wrote the book on spiritual warfare, including the phrase, “we wrestle not against flesh and blood,” he did not blame immaterial spirits that may have been operating behind Alexander the coppersmith. He named the*

*man himself as the culprit and warned Timothy to beware of the damage he could do to the work of the ministry.*

4. *The point to be made from this is not one of personal revenge toward a wrongdoer, but that wisdom is needed during spiritual warfare because prayer is most profitable when it is directed with specificity—in this case, recognizing the source of the problem, the conduit, even when it is made of flesh.*
  
5. *Jesus likewise verbalized the difference between people who attend religious services and become tools for evil as opposed to good, and we note with particular interest His genius in using the small yet powerful word “of” to contrast the two for His followers. In John 8:44, He said of the Pharisees, “Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do” (emphasis added), while in Luke 9:51–56, when James and John wanted to call fire down from heaven upon Samaritan villagers, He rebuked them and said, “Ye know not what manner of spirit ye are of. For the Son of man is not come to destroy men’s lives; but to save them” (emphasis added). This amazing yet insightful little term “of” probes beyond temporal human activity to identify whose dominion one belongs to and what spirit holds one’s allegiance and offers one motivation. The Pharisees were “of” their father the devil, while the disciples James and John were still learning the nature of the spirit they were “of.” The Word of God was therefore used by the Pharisees as a tool for destruction, illustrating what spirit they were “of,” while Jesus and His followers used the same tool to give life to others.*

----- TEAR OUT SHEET -----

**FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK SIX**

(Read chapter six of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. The authors of Forbidden Gates open the sixth chapter with a question about whether a born again believer can be demon possessed. They say a true Christian cannot. Do you agree or disagree?
2. Notwithstanding the question of possession, the authors of Forbidden Gates believe Christians certainly can become “demonized.” Write down your feelings about this process as outlined in Forbidden Gates.
3. The authors then describe the steps (temptation, influence, obsession, demonization, possession) that can lead to demonization of a Christian or possession of an unsaved person. Have you or somebody you know wrestled with or overcome any of the advanced stages of this process (for instance “obsession”)?
4. According to the authors of Forbidden Gates, the battle for control of these steps and doorways begins within the mind and moves outward toward physical fulfillment and ultimately through the stages from “temptation” to demonization or even possession. How frequently would you say this battle within the mind occurs? Minute by minute, hour by hour, daily, or only occasionally?
5. In what at first seems almost out of place in this discussion, the authors on pages 111-115 bring up the subject of Sparagmos (“torn apart”) and Omophagia (“consumed raw”) related to Dionysian rituals by the Bacchae women. The subject offers obvious blasphemy of the concept of Holy Communion, but can you think of other ways the message of communion, the mind, and spiritual warfare may have deeper meaning than the authors took time to explain in Forbidden Gates?
6. In the final section of chapter six, the authors of Forbidden Gates ask “So who’s in control of YOUR mind?” This question is followed by a statement of fact rarely defined inside church institutions – that PEOPLE sometimes are the problem, not just the spirits operating behind them. Do you see a conflict between this statement and Ephesians 6:12?

# LESSON #7

## THE COMING BATTLE WILL BE MORE THAN COSMISTS vs. TERRANS

Have the study group read chapter seven of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSES:** Genesis 6:12-13; Matthew 24:37

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #7 is to begin establishing how emerging fields of technology combined with transhumanist philosophy threatens to change what it means to be human and thus what believers understand about spiritual warfare.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter seven of *Forbidden Gates* represents the “turn in the curve” in this 13-week study. With the basic concepts of Spiritual Warfare learned over the past six weeks, the class should be ready to move into uncharted waters, which previous generations would not have dreamed the church would be facing. The startling yet potentially unstoppable ramifications represented by the information contained in the next seven weeks of classes may at first seem unbelievable. But as students review government documents, legitimate news reports, and even prophecy, the incredible vision of a posthuman world will come into view, providing believers with both the challenge – and the answers – to what the authors of the study book call *Techno-Dimensional Spiritual Warfare*.

- 1. With chapter seven of Forbidden Gates, this study finally reaches the “turn in the curve” in that the subject of human-enhancement and transhumanism is finally raised. Before reading this book, were you familiar with these terms or the subject matter? If so, in what way?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**



- a) In order that students will clearly understand certain basic expressions, which will be repeated throughout the next seven weeks, it is important at the outset of this class to clarify two of the two terms – transhumanism and posthuman:

FROM WIKIPEDIA

### **1. Transhumanism**

Transhumanism is an international intellectual and cultural movement supporting the use of science and technology to improve human mental and physical characteristics and capacities. The movement regards aspects of the human condition, such as disability, suffering, disease, aging, and involuntary death as unnecessary and undesirable. Transhumanists look to biotechnologies and other emerging technologies for these purposes. Dangers, as well as benefits, are also of concern to the transhumanist movement.

The term "transhumanism" is symbolized by H+ (previously >H) and is often used as a synonym for "human enhancement". Although the first known use of the term dates from 1957, the contemporary meaning is a product of the 1980s when futurists in the United States began to organize what has since grown into the transhumanist movement. Transhumanist thinkers predict that human beings may eventually be able to transform themselves into beings with such greatly expanded abilities as to merit the label "posthuman". Transhumanism is therefore sometimes referred to as "posthumanism" or a form of transformational activism influenced by posthumanist ideals.

### **2. Posthuman**

According to transhumanist thinkers, a posthuman is a hypothetical future being "whose basic capacities so radically exceed those of present humans as to be no longer unambiguously human by our current standards."

The difference between the posthuman and other hypothetical sophisticated non-humans is that a posthuman was once a human, either in its lifetime or in the lifetimes of some or all of its direct ancestors. As such, a prerequisite for a posthuman is a transhuman, the point at which the human being begins surpassing his or her own limitations, but is still recognizable as a human person or similar. In this sense, the transition between human and posthuman may be viewed as a continuum rather than an all-or-nothing event.

In critical theory, the posthuman is a speculative being that represents or seeks to enact a re-writing of what is generally conceived of as human. It is the object of posthumanist criticism, which critically questions Renaissance humanism, a branch of humanist philosophy which claims that human nature is a universal state from which the human being emerges; human nature is autonomous, rational, capable of free will, and unified in itself as the apex of existence. Thus, the posthuman recognizes imperfectability and disunity within him or herself, instead understanding the world through context and heterogeneous perspectives while maintaining intellectual rigour and a dedication to objective observations of the world. Key to this posthuman practice is the ability to fluidly change perspectives and manifest oneself through different identities. The posthuman, for critical theorists of the subject, has an emergent ontology rather than a stable one; in other words, the posthuman is not a singular, defined individual, but rather one who can "become" or embody different identities and understand the world from multiple, heterogeneous perspectives.

- b) The teacher will also benefit from familiarizing themselves with the following websites operated by leading transhumanist philosophers (this is not an exhaustive list):

<http://ieet.org/index.php/>

<http://www.nickbostrom.com/>

<http://www.acceleratingfuture.com/michael/blog/>

<http://www.kurzweilai.net/>

<http://www.hplusmagazine.com/>

<http://singularityhub.com/>

<http://jetpress.org/>

2. **Chapter two of Forbidden Gates opens with discussion of a coming war. This battle will not be limited to ideological issues, but potentially represents vast bloodshed. It sounds like a modern prediction of Armageddon, yet evolves from some of the very persons currently working toward a transhuman future. Does it surprise you that some scientists fear they are constructing the very tools that may destroy them and their progeny?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) In 2009, Forbes Magazine interviewed Prof. Hugo de Garis, whose work the authors refer to in chapter seven of *Forbidden Gates*. If the teacher does not have time to read the entire book, [\*The Artilect War\*](#) by de Garis, the online interview with Forbes is a helpful summary of his thesis. It is available here:

<http://www.forbes.com/2009/06/18/cosmist-terran-cyborgist-opinions-contributors-artificial-intelligence-09-hugo-de-garis.html>

- b) The teacher may wish to discuss with the class how the scenario outlined in *The Artilect War* does in fact sound like Prof. de Garis is describing Armageddon – a time when anti-human forces will align against the army of Christ wherein blood will flow to a horses bridle (Revelation 14:19-20).
- c) What the teacher and the class may find most interesting is that de Garis is an atheist and a transhumanist. Yet the language throughout his book describes the conflict he sees coming in religious language, where god-like artificial intelligence threatens humanity. He further describes the sense of “religious” euphoria he experiences as he anticipates the birth of this synthetic “deity” (his words). Yet he wakes up in the middle of the night in a cold sweat, shaken from sleep by a horrific nightmare in which he sees humanity in a sea of blood and destruction at the hands of this creation. Even then, he describes feeling “compelled” by forces that he does not understand. The class may wish to speculate about the identity of this “unknown force” driving de Garis and men like him toward opening the gateway for strong artificial deity-like intelligence to emerge.

3. An interesting point is made in this seventh chapter of *Forbidden Gates* about how the “brilliantly insane” Theodore (Ted) Kaczynski (the Unabomber) predicted this very issue—that man would become dependent on machine intelligence, but by the time humans realized the real risk of artificial intelligence, it would be too late. Do you believe we are already seeing this kind of social dependence on machine intelligence and that it is too late to turn back? Have we already started down the slippery slope toward the “rise of the machines”?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) In case the teacher has never read it, the Unabomber Manifesto (*Industrial Society and Its Future*) is available online at various sites including at Wikipedia here:

[http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/Industrial\\_Society\\_and\\_Its\\_Future](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/Industrial_Society_and_Its_Future)

- b) The authors of *Forbidden Gates* say, crazy or not, “Kaczynski may be right in that man’s demise at the hands of machines will happen gradually, during which time we humans will become the proverbial frogs in the kettle set to boil.” Discuss with the class how such popular media as the Terminator movies have depicted a dystopian future in which the survival of humanity depends on overcoming machines bent on destroying us. The class may find it interesting to learn what the different views among their fellow believers are on this possible scenario.
- c) Finally, point out how the authors of *Forbidden Gates* believe it is more likely that a threat to humanity will arrive as a result of Technological Singularity, in which an artificial “thinking” and reasoning mind comes online, trillions of trillions of times faster and smarter than humans. Again, Wikipedia provides a brief summary of this concept:

A technological singularity is a hypothetical event occurring when technological progress becomes so extremely rapid, due to positive feedback, that it makes the future after the Singularity qualitatively different and harder to predict. It has been suggested that a singularity

will occur during the 21st century, and there are several mechanisms by which a singularity could occur.

Vernor Vinge proposed that the creation of smarter-than-human intelligence would represent a breakdown in humans' ability to model their future. Humans cannot, he says, predict the actions of more intelligent entities. He compared it to the breakdown of physics so that it cannot be used to model the space-time singularity beyond the event horizon of a black hole.

The second conception of the singularity is that of an intelligence explosion, a term coined by I. J. Good. Although technological progress has been accelerating, it has been limited by the basic intelligence of the human brain, which has not, according to Paul R. Ehrlich, changed significantly for millennia. However with the increasing power of computers and other technologies, it might eventually be possible to build a machine that is more intelligent than humanity. If smarter-than-human intelligences were invented, either through the amplification of human intelligence or artificial intelligence, it would bring to bear greater problem-solving and inventive skills than humans, then it could design a yet more capable machine, or re-write its source code to become more intelligent. This more capable machine then could design a machine of even greater capability. These iterations could accelerate, leading to recursive self improvement, potentially allowing enormous qualitative change before any upper limits imposed by the laws of physics or theoretical computation set in.

Futurist Ray Kurzweil generalized singularity to apply to the sudden growth of any technology, not just intelligence; and argues that singularity in the sense of sharply accelerating technological change is inevitably implied by a long-term pattern of accelerating change that generalizes Moore's law to technologies predating the integrated circuit, and includes material technology (especially as applied to nanotechnology), medical technology and others.

The term technological singularity reflects the idea that the change may happen suddenly, and that it is very difficult to predict how such a new world would operate. It is unclear whether an intelligence explosion of

this kind would be beneficial or harmful, or even an existential threat, as the issue has not been dealt with by most AGI researchers, although the topic of Friendly AI is investigated by the Singularity Institute for Artificial Intelligence and the Future of Humanity Institute.

4. **After two decades and thousands of hours of research, the authors of Forbidden Gates believe Technological Singularity (in terms of strong artificial intelligence) is only a matter of time (should the world continue without divine interference). They also agree with experts like Ray Kurzweil and Hugo de Garis that we are at the bend of the knee in which technological progress is about to accelerate exponentially, leading to the birth of synthetic intelligence. Do you agree or disagree with this assessment, and why?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to download and read “The Coming Technological Singularity” by Vernor Vinge, which is referred to on page 132 of Forbidden Gates. A pdf of the lecture can be downloaded from our website here:

<http://www.forbiddengate.com/vinge-singularity.pdf>

- b) The teacher can watch Ray Kurzweil’s presentation at the TED conference on the rate of technological progress online here:

[http://www.ted.com/index.php/talks/ray\\_kurzweil\\_on\\_how\\_technology\\_will\\_transform\\_us.html](http://www.ted.com/index.php/talks/ray_kurzweil_on_how_technology_will_transform_us.html)

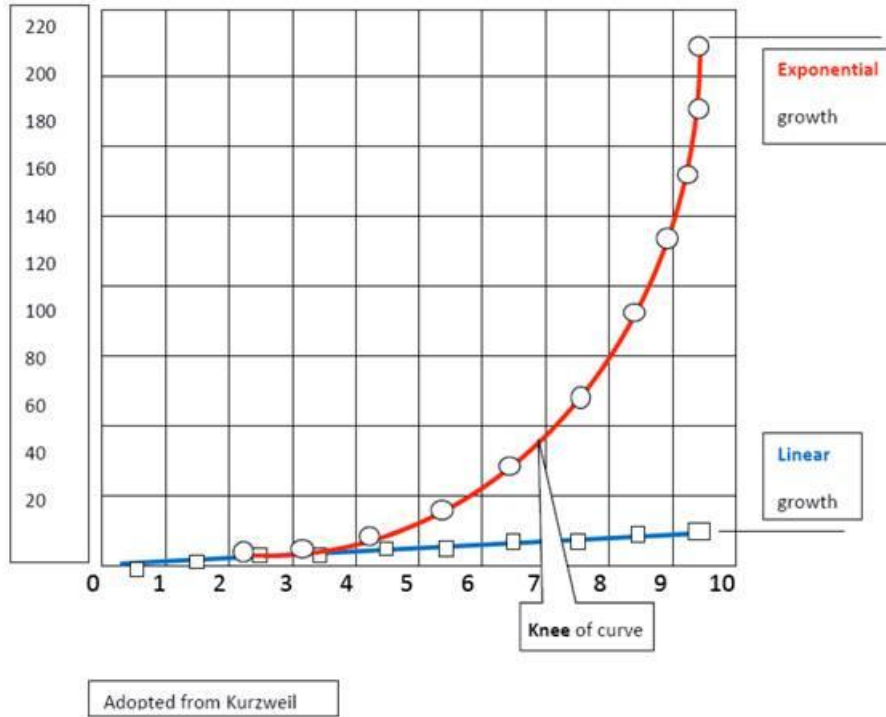
- c) A version of Kurzweil’s book “The Singularity is Near” can be read online at Google Books here:

[http://books.google.com/books?id=88U6hdUi6D0C&pg=RA1-PA50&lpg=RA1-PA50&dq=the+overall+rate+of+adopting+new+paradigms+ray+kurzweil&source=bl&ots=v\\_k-pMxtHO&sig=avhisytAnrEucWBnyPJ1E-I0MI4&hl=en&ei=ew22TljRIYShnge988Fq&sa=X&oi=book\\_result&ct=result&resnum=1&ved=0CBYQ6AEwAA#v=onepage&q&f=false](http://books.google.com/books?id=88U6hdUi6D0C&pg=RA1-PA50&lpg=RA1-PA50&dq=the+overall+rate+of+adopting+new+paradigms+ray+kurzweil&source=bl&ots=v_k-pMxtHO&sig=avhisytAnrEucWBnyPJ1E-I0MI4&hl=en&ei=ew22TljRIYShnge988Fq&sa=X&oi=book_result&ct=result&resnum=1&ved=0CBYQ6AEwAA#v=onepage&q&f=false)

- d) Finally, we recommend the teacher read Kurzweil's essay "The Law of Accelerating Returns" on his website here:

<http://www.kurzweilai.net/the-law-of-accelerating-returns>

- e) Simply put, Kurzweil and futurists like him believe we are fast approaching an exponential growth of technological progress. The idea is that a paradigm shift is on the horizon involving "technological change so rapid and profound it represents a rupture in the fabric of human history." Kurzweil believes this Law of Accelerating Returns implies that a technological singularity will occur before the end of the 21st century. As a result, the teacher may wish to explain / illustrate to the class what is meant by the "exponential curve". One famous example is placing grains of rice on a chess board starting with one grain on the first square, doubling that to 2 on the second square, double that to 4 on the third square, 8 on the fourth and so on. How many grains of rice do you have by the time you arrive at the 64<sup>th</sup> square? There would be 18,446,744,073,709,551,615 grains, weighing 461,168,602,000 metric tons, which would be a heap of rice larger than mount Everest. This simple exercise illustrates while progress or accumulation starts out slowly, by the time one reaches the second half of the board, the knee of the exponential curve is reached and an explosive duplication curve follows. This is where Kurzweil believes we are approaching in terms of technology. The graph below also illustrates the knee of the exponential curve:



5. How technological singularity will play a role in human-enhancement and transhumanism will be profound in that rapid problem-solving as a result of strong artificial intelligence will quickly lead to new innovations as well as improvements to current human-machine integration and biological alterations. As the reader will increasingly learn over the next seven weeks, government and academic groups are aware of this coming redefinition of humanity and have been quietly funding research that will be used for setting public policy around human enhancement as the next step in man's evolution. For instance, what did you think when you learned on page 136 of *Forbidden Gates* that the National Institute of Health (NIH) had recently provided \$773,000.00 to Case Law School in Cleveland, Ohio for developing the guidelines that will be used for setting public policy on human enhancement?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) A YouTube playlist is available at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com) featuring a 1+ hour lecture delivered by *Forbidden Gates* co-author Tom Horn in 2010 at the Canton, Ohio *Science and Supernatural Conference* that provides details of the NIH Grant, Case Law School, and the professor that led the team of law professors, physicians, and bioethicists over the two year study, which



ended in 2009. This video may be a helpful resource to the teacher on this point.

- b) The teacher should read “Transhumanist Values” by Prof. Nick Bostrom on his website to see how some of the experts imagine the recalibration of humanity including integration with animal DNA. That web link is here:

<http://www.nickbostrom.com/ethics/values.html>

- c) The teacher may wish to point out that it is more than interesting that Prof. Bostrom (as well as many transhumanists) was / is influenced by the teachings of Friedrich Nietzsche (from whom the phrase “God is dead” derives) and Goethe, the author of Faust. Nietzsche was the originator of the Übermensch or “Overman” that Adolf Hitler dreamed of engineering, and the “entity” that man will eventually evolve into. More shall be said of this in weeks to come.

- 6. The authors of Forbidden Gates continue in chapter seven to describe the era that we are poised to enter as reminiscent of “The Island of Doctor Moreau,” but on steroids; in other words, the developing scenario may be much worse than H. G. Wells could have imagined in his worst nightmares, as it now appears that government think tanks and the military view a new arms race involving modified humans as potentially unavoidable. In upcoming classes we will look at more immediate issues that will arise in Christian homes as a result of human-enhancement. But how does learning of this situation cause you to react?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Due to our desire to establish the basic fundamentals—what transhumanism is—during this week’s study, we skipped numerous talking points the teacher may wish to raise:
1. The question of animals seeing into the spirit world and the transhuman dream of opening such modes of perception by blending humans with animals.

2. The SOPHIA project at ASU and the quest to make contact with spirits.
3. “Memory transference” as mentioned on page 142 of Forbidden Gates.
4. The threat of transhuman terrorism mentioned on pages 142-143.
5. The peer-reviewed article by George Annas, Lori Andrews, and Rosario Isasi in the American Journal of Law and Medicine can be downloaded at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com).
6. The presentation by Mihail Roco to which Dr. Hook refers on page 146 “Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance” can be downloaded at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com).
7. The video presentations “Warring Futures: A Future Tense Event: How Biotech and Robotics are Transforming Today’s Military—and How That Will Change the Rest of Us” mentioned on page 147 can be viewed at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com).

b) If the teacher has time, perhaps end this class by printing some of the news reports that are linked in the side columns at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com) and passing them around the class in order to illustrate that the issue is not being over-hyped, that it is real and must be a growing concern for the church. Perhaps also acknowledge how historically, national laboratories operating with WAIVED SAPS (black budgets) tend to be decades ahead of public information, thus such headlines are likely just the tip of the iceberg. Some of the headlines the teacher may consider printing out are:

***Case Law School Receives \$773,000 NIH Grant To Develop Guidelines For Genetic Enhancement Research***

***Engineering Oblivion: Eugenics, The Remaking Of Man And Unmaking Of Morality***

***Redesigning Humans: The Final Frontier***

***Triple Helix: Designing a New Molecule of Life***

***Top Pentagon Scientists Fear Brain-Modified Foes***

***Scientists Create First Self-Replicating Synthetic Life***

***The Techno Sapiens Are Coming***

***Scientists Debate The Benefits Of Animals With Human Genes***

***Part-Human, Part-Machine Transistor Devised***

***Remanufacturing Mankind Secretly Driven By Military And Corporate Interests***

***Merely Human? That's So Yesterday***

***Pentagon to Breed Immortal Synthetic Organisms***

***Genes Without Borders***

***Darpa's New Plans: Crowdsource Intel, Edit DNA***

***The Real Frankenstein Experiment: One Man's Mission To Create A Living Mind Inside A Machine***

***Of Mice, Men and In-Between: Scientists Debate Blending Of Human, Animal Forms***

***Darpa to Master Biology, Outdo Evolution***

***Warring Futures: A Future Tense Event: How Biotech and Robotics are Transforming Today's Military -- and How That Will Change the Rest of Us***

***How Will Nanoparticles Get Along Inside Transhumans?***

***The Merging of Nanotech, Biotech, Infotech, and Brain Sciences***

***Recipe for a Resurrection***

***Monsters, Inc.***

***The Future of the Human Species***

***Pitching the New Transhumanism Religion in the NYT***

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK SEVEN

(Read chapter seven of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. With chapter seven of Forbidden Gates, this study finally reaches the “turn in the curve” in that the subject of human-enhancement and transhumanism is finally raised. Before reading this book, were you familiar with these terms or the subject matter? If so, in what way?
2. Chapter two of Forbidden Gates opens with discussion of a coming war. This battle will not be limited to ideological issues, but potentially represents vast bloodshed. It sounds like a modern prediction of Armageddon, yet evolves from some of the very persons currently working toward a transhuman future. Does it surprise you that some scientists fear they are constructing the very tools that may destroy them and their progeny?
3. An interesting point is made in this seventh chapter of Forbidden Gates about how the “brilliantly insane” Theodore (Ted) Kaczynski (the Unabomber) predicted this very issue—that man would become dependent on machine intelligence, but by the time humans realized the real risk of artificial intelligence, it would be too late. Do you believe we are already seeing this kind of social dependence on machine intelligence and that it is too late to turn back? Have we already started down the slippery slope toward the “rise of the machines”?
4. After two decades and thousands of hours of research, the authors of Forbidden Gates believe Technological Singularity (in terms of strong artificial intelligence) is only a matter of time (should the world continue without divine interference). They also agree with experts like Ray Kurzweil and Hugo de Garis that we are at the bend of the knee in which technological progress is about to accelerate exponentially, leading to the birth of synthetic intelligence. Do you agree or disagree with this assessment, and why?
5. How technological singularity will play a role in human-enhancement and transhumanism will be profound in that rapid problem-solving as a result of strong artificial intelligence will quickly lead to new innovations as well as improvements to current human-machine integration and biological alterations of the specie. As the reader will increasingly learn over the next seven weeks, government and academic groups are aware of the upcoming redefinition of humanity and have been quietly funding research that will be used for setting public policy around human enhancement as the next step in man’s evolution. For instance, what did you think when you learned on page 136 of Forbidden Gates that the National Institute of Health (NIH) had provided a \$773,000.00 grant to Case Law School in Cleveland, Ohio for developing the guidelines that will be used for setting public policy on human enhancement?
6. The authors of Forbidden Gates continue in chapter seven to describe the era that we are poised to enter as reminiscent of “The Island of Doctor Moreau,” but on steroids; in other words, the developing scenario may be much worse than H. G. Wells could have imagined in his worst nightmares, as it now appears that government think tanks and the military view a new arms race involving modified humans as potentially unavoidable. In upcoming classes we will look at more immediate issues that will arise in Christian homes as a result of human-enhancement. But how does learning of this situation cause you to react?

# LESSON #8

## THE HELL SCENARIO WILL BE NOTHING TO *GRIN* ABOUT

Have the study group read chapter eight of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSES:** Col. 1:16; Romans 1:18-25

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #8 is to build on last week's introduction to emerging fields of technology and transhumanist philosophy—which is already moving beyond barriers put in place by God—to ask if man is threatening to open a “Pandora's Box” to a molecular biological nightmare, which could at a minimum result in negative health related issues, even plagues of biblical proportions, that will change spiritual warfare and potentially even result in fulfillment of prophecy.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter Eight of Forbidden Gates continues with an overview of some of the emerging fields of science and technology that, among other things, will play a role in changing the Christian's responsibility regarding spiritual warfare. While each of the fields discussed today could “open gates” to dangerous side-effects such as new disease strains or negative environmental repercussions – it is their potential impact on the human condition – physical, mental, and spiritual – that concerns us most.

- 1. In the opening paragraphs of Forbidden Gates, chapter eight, Tom Horn describes a writer for Wired Magazine contacting him to ask if he would provide points of concern over creating transgenic animals (animals whose DNA is modified to include human or other animal or plant genes not native to their specie) for pharmaceutical research. According to the writer, Tom's cautionary notes were first included then edited out of the article, “Pharm Animals Crank Out Drugs,” because the magazine preferred a mostly positive spin on the subject. Do you believe similar efforts are being made to**

**intentionally censor or tailor this information, which the public might perceive as a threat to their physical, mental, and even spiritual health?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher should open this class with a casual conversation about whether agencies of the government, national or private laboratories, and even the press “structure” the way information is disseminated in order to steer public opinion and reaction. Discuss how this occurs because nearly everybody involved in the release of information has a vested interest in public reaction—from the corporation that stands to make billions of dollars on the sale and adoption of its product (or that needs to hide from litigation due to harm created from its product; for instance the famous case against the Pacific Gas and Electric Company [PG&E] of California in 1993 by Erin Brockovich), to the politician that needs to maintain his or her power structure, to those who are ideologically driven by schemes to mold society according to selfish ambition.
  
- b) The teacher may also wish to raise the issue of how often the control of public information is not just an issue of carefully crafting how they themselves (the corporation, politician, or ideologue) will frame their language for public consumption, but also how, since the invention of the internet as an “information” highway, big corporations, politicians and even the US Congress have been flustered by easy public access to information. Perhaps, as an example, discuss the issue of “Net Neutrality,” which some believe is the biggest First Amendment issue of our time. For instance during a keynote address to the Netroots Nation conference in Las Vegas in 2010, US Senator Al Franken warned of the looming merger between cable giant Comcast and NBC-Universal, saying: “If no one stops them, how long do you think it will take before 4 or 5 mega-corporations effectively control the flow of information in America not only on television but online? If we don't protect Net Neutrality now ... how long do you think it will take before [they] start favoring [their] content over everyone else's?”
  
- c) The teacher may also wish to point out how since the release of the book ***Forbidden Gates***, the #1 transhumanist blog sites, the #1 transhumanist online think tank (IEET), and even the co-author of the US National Science Foundation Report “Ethics of Human Enhancement: 25 Questions and

Answers” (download at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)) have angrily responded to the ***Forbidden Gates*** author’s call for conservative Christians to get involved in the public debate over human enhancement. These voices are making it very clear that, even though their reports are funded by US taxpayers, they do not wish to have certain members of the public, which they describe in their own words as “theists” and “fundamentalist Christians” involved in this deliberation. Thus the war over the control of information—how it is “framed” and by whom it is “published”—is central even to the very study upon which this series of classes are based. Of course it should be apparent to everybody in the class that correct perception of information is central to spiritual warfare.

- 2. Some of the concerns, which the writers of *Forbidden Gates* believe members of the church and society in general need to be aware of includes genetically modified food, synthetic biology, germline engineering and other issues listed on pages 155-166. Of these, which did you find most disturbing, and why?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) As the list of nine subjects listed on pages 155-166 would by themselves require several weeks of classes, the teacher may wish to choose one or two subjects from the list to especially focus on. We suggest the teacher at this point also read or have class members read the following statements and verses that will help define what the Christian position or response to genetic re-engineering of humans and other species could be:
1. All things were created by God and for Him (Colossians 1:16).
  2. We are made in God’s image to follow his plan (Genesis 1:26,27; Matthew 22:20,21).
  3. God created all life according to a divine order and to reproduce after certain “kinds” (Genesis 1:11-25).
  4. Psalm 139 describes creation being design from the womb. Would cloning or germline engineering fall outside God’s design and jeopardize God-consciousness or the soul?
  5. Genesis 3:15 says, “And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed [zera, meaning “offspring,”



“descendants,” or “children”] and her seed.” In a later class we shall discuss how an incredible tenet emerges—that Satan has seed, and that it is at enmity with Christ. Meanwhile, perhaps ask the class if life could be engineered that alters the meaning of “seed” as God designed it and thus be unredeemable? (1 Corinthians 15:22, 23).

6. There is also the question (even among transhumanists) about whether genetic engineering is playing God or motivated by a defiance of Him. Genesis 11:1-9 and Romans 1:18-32 tells us what happens in this scenario.

b) The teacher should also point out how supernatural “healing” and protection of believers is central to spiritual warfare and will be increasingly needed by Christians to defend our bodies and minds from the effects of genetically modified organisms (GMOs) and other biological hazards. For instance, on pages 155-157 of *Forbidden Gates* the dangers of genetically modified foods are discussed, yet missionaries for two thousand years have understood the supernatural benefit of praying over their food in accordance with 1 Timothy 4:4-5, which says, “For every creature of God [is] good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving: For it is sanctified [Greek *hagiazō*, 'purified'] by the word of God and prayer.” Thus new and emerging fields of technology may take such things as praying over meals away from tradition and back to a time when deeper meaning existed within this practice.

c) Ask the class what they thought of each of the issues raised on pages 155-166. Allow them to discuss the points they wrote down during the week, the dangers or benefits they imagine coming from:

1. Genetically Modified Food
2. Synthetic Biology
3. Patenting New Life Forms
4. GM Science and Animals Rights
5. Human Cloning
6. Redefining Humans and Human Rights
7. Nanotechnology and Cybernetics
8. New Eugenics via Transhumanism
9. Germline Engineering

3. Under the subtitle “Heaven and Hell Scenarios,” the authors of *Forbidden Gates* point out how scientists, philosophers, and bioethicists are coming down on one side or another, believing the genetics revolution and human enhancement herald the dawn of either a utopian age or a dystopian hell. If you had to pick, what would your guess be concerning the ultimate outcome of the grand experiment man has set course on regarding transhumanism and the genetics revolution? In what way can you imagine this becoming a HELL SCENARIO?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Lead the class in a general discussion of the Heaven vs. Hell scenarios represented by modern technology – from genetic engineering and nanotechnology to synthetic biology – which has already begun to fashion new forms of life and alter existing ones, and how they can imagine the dangers and benefits.
- b) Make the case that most Christians are not anti-tech “Luddites” and that in fact that, throughout history, the Church has been at the forefront of disease treatment discovery, institutions for health care, hospitals, and other medical schools and research centers. In other words, we do not champion a philosophy toward techno-dystopianism. Indeed, what a day it will be when cancer is cured and we all shout “Hallelujah!”
- c) The teacher may wish to highlight some talking points from the sections in bold below, taken from Prof. Francis Fukuyama’s 2004 *Foreign Policy Magazine* article, *Transhumanism – The World’s Most Dangerous Idea*:

By Francis Fukuyama

For the last several decades, a strange liberation movement has grown within the developed world. Its crusaders aim much higher than civil rights campaigners, feminists, or gay-rights advocates. **They want nothing less than to liberate the human race from its biological constraints.** As “transhumanists” see it, humans must wrest their

biological destiny from evolution's blind process of random variation and adaptation and **move to the next stage as a species.**

It is tempting to dismiss transhumanists as some sort of odd cult [keep in mind that Fukuyama wrote this in 2004. Transhumanism has since been adopted within government and military circles as a correct vision of the future], nothing more than science fiction taken too seriously: Witness their over-the-top Web sites and recent press releases ("Cyborg Thinkers to Address Humanity's Future," proclaims one). The plans of some transhumanists to freeze themselves cryogenically in hopes of being revived in a future age seem only to confirm the movement's place on the intellectual fringe.

But is the fundamental tenet of transhumanism -- that we will someday use biotechnology to make ourselves stronger, smarter, less prone to violence, and longer-lived -- really so outlandish? **Transhumanism of a sort is implicit in much of the research agenda of contemporary biomedicine.** The new procedures and technologies emerging from research laboratories and hospitals -- whether mood-altering drugs, substances to boost muscle mass or selectively erase memory, prenatal genetic screening, or gene therapy -- can as easily be used to "enhance" the species as to ease or ameliorate illness.

Although the rapid advances in biotechnology often leave us vaguely uncomfortable, the intellectual or moral threat they represent is not always easy to identify. The human race, after all, is a pretty sorry mess, with our stubborn diseases, physical limitations, and short lives. **Throw in humanity's jealousies, violence, and constant anxieties, and the transhumanist project begins to look downright reasonable.** If it were technologically possible, why wouldn't we want to transcend our current species? **The seeming reasonableness of the project, particularly when considered in small increments, is part of its danger. Society is unlikely to fall suddenly under the spell of the transhumanist worldview. But it is very possible that we will nibble at biotechnology's tempting offerings without realizing that they come at a frightful moral cost.**

**The first victim of transhumanism might be equality. The U.S. Declaration of Independence says that "all men are created equal," and**

the most serious political fights in the history of the United States have been over who qualifies as fully human. Women and blacks did not make the cut in 1776 when Thomas Jefferson penned the declaration. Slowly and painfully, advanced societies have realized that simply being human entitles a person to political and legal equality. In effect, we have drawn a red line around the human being and said that it is sacrosanct.

**Underlying this idea of the equality of rights is the belief that we all possess a human essence that dwarfs manifest differences in skin color, beauty, and even intelligence. This essence, and the view that individuals therefore have inherent value, is at the heart of political liberalism. But modifying that essence is the core of the transhumanist project. If we start transforming ourselves into something superior, what rights will these enhanced creatures claim, and what rights will they possess when compared to those left behind?** If some move ahead, can anyone afford not to follow? These questions are troubling enough within rich, developed societies. Add in the implications for citizens of the world's poorest countries -- for whom biotechnology's marvels likely will be out of reach -- and the threat to the idea of equality becomes even more menacing.

Transhumanism's advocates think they understand what constitutes a good human being, and they are happy to leave behind the limited, mortal, natural beings they see around them in favor of something better. But do they really comprehend ultimate human goods? For all our obvious faults, we humans are miraculously complex products of a long evolutionary process -- products whose whole is much more than the sum of our parts. **Our good characteristics are intimately connected to our bad ones: If we weren't violent and aggressive, we wouldn't be able to defend ourselves; if we didn't have feelings of exclusivity, we wouldn't be loyal to those close to us; if we never felt jealousy, we would also never feel love. Even our mortality plays a critical function in allowing our species as a whole to survive and adapt (and transhumanists are just about the last group I'd like to see live forever). Modifying any one of our key characteristics inevitably entails modifying a complex, interlinked package of traits, and we will never be able to anticipate the ultimate outcome.**

**Nobody knows what technological possibilities will emerge for human self-modification. But we can already see the stirrings of Promethean desires in how we prescribe drugs to alter the behavior and personalities of our children. The environmental movement has taught us humility and respect for the integrity of nonhuman nature. We need a similar humility concerning our human nature. If we do not develop it soon, we may unwittingly invite the transhumanists to deface humanity with their genetic bulldozers and psychotropic shopping malls.**

**4. In what way could you imagine (at least as a mental experiment) emerging technology and human enhancement leading to a HEAVEN SCENARIO?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

a) The teacher may wish to download the *U.S. National Science Foundation and Department of Commerce Commissioned Report: Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance* (PDF) from [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com) to add to the talking points below, which were envisioned as part of the Heaven Scenario by the government study:

- The transhuman body will be “more durable, healthy, energetic, easier to repair, and resistant to many kinds of stress, biological threats, and aging processes.”
- Brain-machine interfacing will “transform work in factories, control automobiles, ensure military superiority, and enable new sports, art forms and modes of interaction between people.”
- Engineers, artists, architects, and designers will experience tremendously expanded creative abilities, in part through “improved understanding of the wellspring of human creativity.”
- Average persons, as well as policymakers, will have a vastly improved awareness of the cognitive, social, and biological forces operating their lives, enabling far better adjustment, creativity, and daily decision making.
- Factories of tomorrow will be organized around “increased human-machine capabilities.”

5. What do you make of the fact that several of the government experts and reports cited in *Forbidden Gates* see these Heaven/Hell scenarios (which ever it will be) as risky but unavoidable, even the dawn of a new arms race?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to go back to chapter seven in *Forbidden Gates* to discuss some of the material that was not covered in last week's lesson that had to do with how the military now views "human enhancement" as an unavoidable new arms race. Specifically, information contained on pages 141-152 under the subtitle ENHANCED HUMANS: THE NEW (NEPHILIM) ARMS RACE. Some of that material includes:

1. The study by Evan Balaban at McGill University in Montreal.
2. The HFA hearings in California.
3. The related "Genes Without Borders" article here:  
<http://www.geneticsandsociety.org/article.php?id=4593>
4. The American Journal of Law and Medicine article "Protecting the Endangered Human: Toward an International Treaty Prohibiting Cloning and Inheritable Alterations" (PDF) available at  
[www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)
5. The info from the leaked Pentagon paper illustrating the secret human enhancement arms race and the fear by the JASON's of America's enemies getting ahead of the US in this area. Wired has a short article on this here:  
<http://www.wired.com/dangerroom/2008/06/jason-warns-of>
6. The 485 page government report on Converging Technologies at  
[www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)
7. The 2010 Warring Futures videos presentations available at  
[www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)
8. The story about John Poindexter on pages 149-150 of *Forbidden Gates*.
9. The new 2011 Darpa Presidential Budget showing millions of dollars for human enhancement, immortal genes, and other H+ projects.

- b) We also recommend reading the 11 page article at Wired Magazine "Why the future doesn't need us" by Bill Joy at the following link:  
<http://www.wired.com/wired/archive/8.04/joy.html>

c) The teacher should point out how the genetics revolution related to human enhancement is viewed by academics, military analysts, government experts, and even bioethicists and transhumanists as unavoidable for the additional practical reasons:

1. The technology is here and it will be impossible to get all nations to agree to a universal moratorium on its uses.
2. The constitution and bill of rights under the guarantee of life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness will be extended to include human enhancement according to legal scholars.
3. Thousands of national and private laboratories are already refining the science for human application.

**6. Some of the government reports and experts cited in Forbidden Gates point to the year 2012 as the dawn of a “human enhancement revolution.” Do you find this to be curious, given how many ancient cultures such as the Mayan’s viewed this date as a moment in time when mankind would be transformed into a higher state of being?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

a) In closing today’s study, the teacher may find the following excerpt from Tom Horn’s book [Apollyon Rising 2012](#) helpful in discussing how there seems to be an “occult” connection between the year 2012 and prophecies – both ancient and modern – of a coming transformation of man and the dawn of a new age of “being.” Interestingly the ancient prophecies likewise divide between a heaven and hell scenario, where some predict the coming “transformation” as a good thing, others as an apocalypse. (Are two kinds of angels whispering in our ears?)

Time does not allow for a study of each of the numerous sources marking the year 2012 as the end of the age. (For instance: The Bible Code claim that the world will end on this date due to a collision with a meteor, asteroid, or comet; the return of Planet X creating a pole shift and causing the destruction of earth; The Orion Prophecy research by Patrick

Geryl and Gino Ratinckx claiming 2012 apocalyptic prophecy is encoded in the Egyptian Sphinx, pyramids, and zodiacs of the Greco-Roman Dendera temple; or the theory repeated on the television program *The X-Files*, which speculates colonization of the earth by “aliens” in December 2012, an idea recently supported by Tibetan Monks). However, we briefly list below a few of the noteworthy predictive models involving the year 2012, followed by what we consider to be far more important and previously undisclosed information regarding this date.

### **2012 and the I-Ching**

The ending date 2012 can also be found in one of China’s oldest classic texts, the Book of Changes, or I-Ching, an ancient symbol system that was used to divine “order” from random events. When the late philosopher and scientist Terrance McKenna, originator of “Timewave Zero” or “Novelty Theory,” and his brother, Dennis, began studying the I-Ching some years ago, they came across a series of unexpected patterns in the King Wen sequence ending with the year 2012. Using the sixty-four hexagrams of six levels of alternating horizontal bars and dots in the I-Ching, Terrance created a linear model that began thousands of years ago when the I-Ching was created, and continuing into the future. Using a computer program, he formulated a stock market-like graph that depicted a rising and falling line based on patterns from the I-Ching.

To his surprise, he discovered that the high and low parts of the graph corresponded with times in history when “novelty” or major world events transpired, including a spike around the time of September 11, 2001, and a coming spike for October 2010. But one date was unparalleled elsewhere on the graph. This is when the line simply ends, abruptly plunging off the graph into infinity—December 21, 2012. This finding is all the more astonishing given that McKenna’s research was published in 1973 independent of any knowledge of the ending date in the Mayan calendar.



## **2012 and the Web Bot Project**

Of similar interest is the Web Bot Project, which was developed in the late 1990s for tracking and making stock market predictions. The technology crawls the Internet, much like a search engine does, searching for keywords and following “chatter” in order to tap into “the collective unconscious” of the global community for tipping points regarding past, current, and future buying patterns. In 2001, operators began noticing what looked like more than coincidences, and that the “bot” was taking on a mind of its own, accurately predicting more than just stock market predictions, including June of 2001 when the program predicted that a life-altering event would be felt worldwide and would take place within sixty to ninety days. On September 11, 2001, the Twin Towers of the World Trade Center fell. The Web Bot also predicted the 2001 anthrax attack on Washington DC; the earthquake that produced the December 26, 2004, tsunami; Hurricane Katrina; and more. The Web Bot has now foretold global devastation for late December 2012.

## **2012 and Solar Maximum**

In 2006, NASA published a report by Mausumi Dikpati of the National Center for Atmospheric Research on what could be the most powerful solar storm since records began approximately four hundred years ago, scheduled to reach solar maximum in the year 2012. The geomagnetic storm that results during this time could itself become apocalyptic. In April 2009, Michael Hanlon speculated for London’s Daily Mail what this might mean, in an article entitled “Meltdown”:

The catastrophe, when it comes, will be beautiful at first. It is a balmy evening in late September 2012. Ever since the sun set, the dimming skies over London have been alive with fire.

Pillars of incandescent green writhe like gigantic serpents across the skies. Sheets of orange race across the horizon during

the most spectacular display of the aurora borealis seen in southern England for 153 years.

And then, ninety seconds later, the lights start to go out. Not the lights in the sky—they will dazzle until dawn—but the lights on the ground....

Within an hour, large parts of Britain are without power.

By midnight, every mobile network is down and the Internet is dying. Television—terrestrial and satellite—blinks off the air.

Radio is reduced to a burst of static.

By noon the following day, it is clear something terrible has happened and the civilized world has plunged into chaos.

A year later, Britain, most of Europe plus North America is in the grip of the deepest economic catastrophe in history.

By the end of 2013, one hundred thousand Europeans have died of starvation.

Hanlon goes on to detail the effects of 2012's catastrophic solar storm, including food shortages, energy shortages, and rampant disease, concluding that "it would be wise to start stocking up on some candles" (see recommendations at the end of this book on how to survive what is coming).

### **2012 and the Ancient Cherokee Rattlesnake Prophecies**

The "Cherokee Rattlesnake Prophecies," also known as the "Chickamaugan Prophecy" or the "Cherokee Star Constellation Prophecies," are part of a series of apocalyptic prophecies made by members of the Cherokee tribe during 1811–1812. The prophecies are very similar to Mesoamerican belief, and are viewed by scholars as likely

referring to the return of the feathered serpent god Quetzalcoatl in the year 2012. Like the Maya, the Cherokee calendar ends mysteriously in the year 2012 when astronomical phenomena related to Jupiter, Venus, Orion, and Pleiades cause the “powers” of the star systems to “awaken.”

A portion of the “Rattlesnake Prophecy” reads:

At this time [2012] of the fingers striking Jupiter that Orion Star System will awaken. And the Pleiades and Orion will war once again as in old. Jupiter and Venus will awaken to its destiny of Time/Untime of cycles. Orion will war with Pleiades, Jupiter will war with Venus....

In the year...2012 an alignment will take place both on the Cherokee calendar and in the heavens of the Rattlesnake Constellation.... It is the time of the double headed serpent stick. It is the time of the red of Orion and Jupiter against the white blue of Pleiades and Venus....

In the year...2012 the Cherokee Rattlesnake Constellation will take on a different configuration. The snake itself will remain, however; upon the Rattlesnake shall be added upon its head feathers, its eyes will open and glow, wings spring forth as a winged rattlesnake. It shall have hands and arms and in its hands shall be a bowl. The bowl will hold blood. Upon its tail of seven rattles shall be the glowing and movement of Pleiades.

The Rattlesnake shall become a feathered rattlesnake or feathered serpent of Time/Untime [Quetzalcoatl?].

And upon the Rattlesnake is also the Milky Way. A crossing of the Milky Way shall be seen at these times [2012].

And the Cherokee calendar shall end in the year 2012...[with] the coming of the Pale One once again.

## **2012 and Prophecy from the Zohar on Messiah’s Return**

Widely considered the most important work of Jewish Kabbalah, the Zohar is a collection of books written in medieval Aramaic over seven hundred years ago containing mystical commentary on the Pentateuch (five books of Moses, the Torah). In addition to interpreting Scripture, the “Vaera” section (volume 3, section 34) includes “The signs heralding Mashiach,” or “The coming of the Messiah.” The fascinating date for “his” appearance is set in the Zohar at late 2012. Given the rejection of Jesus by orthodox Jews as Messiah, this coming could herald the unveiling of Antichrist in 2012.

J. R. Church of Prophecy in the News called my office recently and led me through verses 476–483 of this part of the Zohar to point out what nobody, as far as I have been able to find, in the 2012 research community has written before—that the time of Jacob’s trouble (the Great Tribulation) will commence according to this ancient text in the year 2012 when the “kings of the earth” gather in Rome and are killed by meteoric stones from the sky.

Interestingly, among other scholars of the implications of the year 2012, a few have pointed to a prophecy by Malachy O’Morgair, or “St. Malachy” as he is known to Catholics, having to do with “the last pope.” The prophecy, taken from St. Malachy’s “Prophecy of the Popes,” is among a list of verses predicting each of the Roman Catholic popes from Pope Celestine II to the final pope, “Peter the Roman,” whose reign would end in the destruction of Rome. According to Malachy’s prophecy, the next pope (following Benedict XVI) is to be the final pontiff, Petrus Romanus, or “Peter the Roman.” He will assume authority during a time of great tribulation, and then “the city of seven hills will be destroyed, and the terrible and fearsome Judge will judge his people.”

### **2012 and Matthew 24**

Is it possible that Jesus marked the year 2012 as prophetic? When His disciples asked, “Tell us, when shall these things be? And what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world [aion]?” (Matthew 24:3), Jesus answered, “as the Days of Noe [Noah] were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be” (Matthew 24:37).

The word aion in this text is not the general word for “time” (chronos) in Greek. Aion is the word the Greeks used to designate an actual cycle of the Milky Way alignments or the span of an age. David Flynn says of this: “The answer Jesus provided His apostles for ‘when’ the end of the aion would occur was specific. The astronomical signs in the heavens would be just as those during the days of Noah when Leviathan encircled the horizon in the dawn of the Summer solstice. There could have been no more accurate comparison made between our present time than the age of Noah....The present aion is coming to a close. Like the sunteleia before, there will be great upheaval and change.”

### **2012 and Christian Prophecy**

The man who is known as the “Walking Bible” due to extensive memorization of Bible texts, Jack Van Impe, recently broadcast on his syndicated Jack Van Impe Presents a special show called “December 21, 2012: History’s Final Day?” in which he described various cultural and secular sources pointing to the year 2012 as being ominous. Some of the material he covered is listed above, such as the Mayan prophecy and the I-Ching. But Impe also shared how he had gone through three thousand headlines and found that everything the prognosticators were saying about the year 2012 reflected what the book of Revelation and the Old Testament prophets foretold for the end of time.

Another Christian researcher who believes the year 2012 could be important is Pastor Mark Biltz of El Shaddai Ministries. Based on his research into Jewish feasts and blood moon eclipses, Biltz found on NASA’s website evidence that a rare event called a “tetrad”—in which four consecutive total lunar eclipses or blood moons appear in a century—will coincide with Passover holy days in 2014–2015. According to Biltz, tetrads have historically appeared around special dates in Israel’s history such as during Passover and Succoth following Israel becoming a nation in 1948, and again in 1967–1968 following the Six-Day War when Israel recaptured Jerusalem. In 2014–2015, blood moons will occur the first day of the Hebrew year and again on the High Holy Day of Rosh Hashanah. If these are in fulfillment of the prophecies of Jesus in

Matthew 24:29–30 and Joel 2:31 concerning “The sun [being] turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and terrible day of the Lord,” they could indicate the imminent return of Christ hypothetically in 2015–2016. As noted in the previous chapter, this would also mean the year 2012 could be the “midst of the week” when Antichrist breaks his covenant with Israel and Great Tribulation begins.

Unorthodox “prophetic” voices, which researchers claim also foresaw the year 2012 as the end of the world, include sixteenth-century English prophetess Mother Shipton, Merlin, Nostradamus, Einstein, Edgar Cayce, Jeane Dixon, the Romans, and the Hopi Indians.

- b) The teacher may wish to close the class making the point that the strong occult-spiritual connection to the same year (2012) that government and tech experts foresee as the beginning of the enhanced human revolution giving rise to a new age of godlike beings seems eerily similar to the serpent in the Garden of Eden tempting Eve with forbidden fruit, the result of which would lead to godlike constitutions and knowledge of good (heaven scenario) and evil (hell scenario).

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK EIGHT

(Read chapter eight of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. In the opening paragraphs of Forbidden Gates, chapter eight, Tom Horn describes a writer for Wired Magazine contacting him to ask if he would provide points of concern over creating transgenic animals (animals whose DNA is modified to include human or other animal or plant genes not native to their specie) for pharmaceutical research. According to the writer, Tom's cautionary notes were first included then edited out of the article, "Pharm Animals Crank Out Drugs," because the magazine preferred a mostly positive spin on the subject. Do you believe similar efforts are being made to intentionally censor or tailor this information, which the public might perceive as a threat to their physical, mental, and even spiritual health?
2. Some of the concerns, which the writers of Forbidden Gates believe members of the church and society in general need to be aware of includes genetically modified food, synthetic biology, germline engineering and other issues listed on pages 155-166. Of these, which did you find most disturbing, and why?
3. Under the subtitle "Heaven and Hell Scenarios," the authors of Forbidden Gates point out how scientists, philosophers, and bioethicists are coming down on one side or another, believing the genetics revolution and human enhancement herald the dawn of either a utopian age or a dystopian hell. If you had to pick, what would your guess be concerning the ultimate outcome of the grand experiment man has set course on regarding transhumanism and the genetics revolution? In what way can you imagine this becoming a HELL SCENARIO?
4. In what way could you imagine (at least as a mental experiment) emerging technology and human enhancement leading to a HEAVEN SCENARIO?
5. What do you make of the fact that several of the government experts and reports cited in Forbidden Gates see these Heaven/Hell scenarios (which ever it will be) as risky but unavoidable, even the dawn of a new arms race?
6. Some of the government reports and experts cited in Forbidden Gates point to the year 2012 as the dawn of a "human enhancement revolution." Do you find this year curious, given how many ancient cultures such as the Mayan's viewed this date as a moment in time when mankind would be transformed into a higher state of being?

# LESSON #9

## THE SPIRIT BEHIND TRANSHUMANISM

Have the study group read chapter nine of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSES:** Genesis 6:1-4; Matthew 24:37

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #9 is to draw parallels between the story of ancient Watchers (fallen angels) and the aim of transhumanism toward genetically altering creation, both man and beast. The question is: are we witnessing a repeat of something that was done once before, and is this fulfillment of prophecy, i.e. "as it was in the days of Noah."

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter nine of Forbidden Gates opens with the assessment made by celebrated English theologian George Hawkins Pember (1837-1910) in his book Earth's Earliest Ages that, based on the words of Jesus in Matthew chapter 24, the end of time would see a return to earth either in physical form or in spirit the "beings" that had unlawfully joined themselves to humanity through "corrupting" human and animal "flesh" (DNA) in fashioning a body into which they could extend themselves.

- 1. The ninth chapter of Forbidden Gates opens with discussion of "the Watchers" and their offspring, the Nephilim or giants of the Old Testament. How familiar are you with this history and the numerous ancients text surrounding these legendary beings?**

### **TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may benefit from reading portions of the online version of "Earth's Earliest Ages" by George Hawkins Pember at Goodgle Books here:



[http://books.google.com/books?id=dOu4ppAwhZ8C&printsec=frontcover&dq=earths+earliest+ages&source=bl&ots=961FQTb3eJ&sig=FdRlpJytF\\_c\\_WTJ7tiYT1myVAAo&hl=en&ei=Vte5TLiTKoacnAfXnNC9DQ&sa=X&oi=book\\_result&ct=result&resnum=6&ved=0CDwQ6AEwBQ#v=onepage&q&f=false](http://books.google.com/books?id=dOu4ppAwhZ8C&printsec=frontcover&dq=earths+earliest+ages&source=bl&ots=961FQTb3eJ&sig=FdRlpJytF_c_WTJ7tiYT1myVAAo&hl=en&ei=Vte5TLiTKoacnAfXnNC9DQ&sa=X&oi=book_result&ct=result&resnum=6&ved=0CDwQ6AEwBQ#v=onepage&q&f=false)

- b) Ask the class to comment on what they know, if anything, about the history of the giants (Nephilim), where they came from, do they believe their legend is based on fact or was it pure mythology.
- c) Because it may come up during this class, the teacher may wish to discuss the difference between what is called “The Sethite View” and “The Angel View” interpretations of Genesis chapter six and the origin of the giants. Below is a copy of the online article by Dr. Chuck Missler, derived from his “Return of the Nephilim” DVD presentation available here:  
<http://www.khouse.org/articles/1997/110/>

Why did God send the judgment of the Flood in the days of Noah? Far more than simply a historical issue, the unique events leading to the Flood are a prerequisite to understanding the prophetic implications of our Lord's predictions regarding His Second Coming.<sup>1</sup>

The strange events recorded in Genesis 6 were understood by the ancient rabbinical sources, as well as the Septuagint translators, as referring to fallen angels procreating weird hybrid offspring with human women—known as the “Nephilim.” So it was also understood by the early church fathers. These bizarre events are also echoed in the legends and myths of every ancient culture upon the earth: the ancient Greeks, the Egyptians, the Hindus, the South Sea Islanders, the American Indians, and virtually all the others.

However, many students of the Bible have been taught that this passage in Genesis 6 actually refers to a failure to keep the “faithful” lines of Seth separate from the “worldly” line of Cain. The idea has been advanced that after Cain killed Abel, the line of Seth remained separate and faithful, but the line of Cain turned ungodly and rebellious. The “Sons of God” are deemed to refer to leadership in the line of Seth; the “daughters of men” is deemed restricted to the line of Cain. The resulting

marriages ostensibly blurred an inferred separation between them. (Why the resulting offspring are called the "Nephilim" remains without any clear explanation.)

Since Jesus prophesied, "As the days of Noah were, so shall the coming of the Son of Man be,"<sup>2</sup> it becomes essential to understand what these days included.

### **Origin of the Sethite View**

It was in the 5th century a.d. that the "angel" interpretation of Genesis 6 was increasingly viewed as an embarrassment when attacked by critics. (Furthermore, the worship of angels had begun within the church. Also, celibacy had also become an institution of the church. The "angel" view of Genesis 6 was feared as impacting these views.)

Celsus and Julian the Apostate used the traditional "angel" belief to attack Christianity. Julius Africanus resorted to the Sethite interpretation as a more comfortable ground. Cyril of Alexandria also repudiated the orthodox "angel" position with the "line of Seth" interpretation. Augustine also embraced the Sethite theory and thus it prevailed into the Middle Ages. It is still widely taught today among many churches who find the literal "angel" view a bit disturbing. There are many outstanding Bible teachers who still defend this view.

### **Problems with the Sethite View**

Beyond obscuring a full understanding of the events in the early chapters of Genesis, this view also clouds any opportunity to apprehend the prophetic implications of the Scriptural allusions to the "Days of Noah."<sup>3</sup> Some of the many problems with the "Sethite View" include the following:

#### **1. The Text Itself**

Substantial liberties must be taken with the literal text to propose the "Sethite" view. (In data analysis, it is often said that "if you torture the data severely enough it will confess to anything.")

The term translated "the Sons of God" is, in the Hebrew, B'nai HaElohim, "Sons of Elohim," which is a term consistently used in the Old Testament for angels,<sup>4</sup> and it is never used of believers in the Old Testament. It was so understood by the ancient rabbinical sources, by the Septuagint translators in the 3rd century before Christ, and by the early church fathers. Attempts to apply this term to "godly leadership" is without Scriptural foundation.<sup>5</sup>

The "Sons of Seth and daughters of Cain" interpretation strains and obscures the intended grammatical antithesis between the Sons of God and the daughters of Adam. Attempting to impute any other view to the text flies in the face of the earlier centuries of understanding of the Hebrew text among both rabbinical and early church scholarship. The lexicographical antithesis clearly intends to establish a contrast between the "angels" and the women of the Earth.

If the text was intended to contrast the "sons of Seth and the daughters of Cain," why didn't it say so? Seth was not God, and Cain was not Adam. (Why not the "sons of Cain" and the "daughters of Seth?" There is no basis for restricting the text to either subset of Adam's descendants. Further, there exists no mention of daughters of Elohim.)

And how does the "Sethite" interpretation contribute to the ostensible cause for the Flood, which is the primary thrust of the text? The entire view is contrived on a series of assumptions without Scriptural support.

The Biblical term "Sons of Elohim" (that is, of the Creator Himself), is confined to the direct creation by the divine hand and not to those born to those of their own order.<sup>6</sup> In Luke's genealogy of Jesus, only Adam is called a "son of God."<sup>7</sup> The entire Biblical drama deals with the tragedy that humankind is a fallen race, with Adam's initial immortality forfeited. Christ uniquely gives them that receive Him the power to become the sons of God.<sup>8</sup> Being born again of the Spirit of God, as an entirely new creation,<sup>9</sup> at their resurrection they alone will be clothed with a building of God<sup>10</sup> and in every respect equal to the angels.<sup>11</sup> The very term oiketerion, alluding to the heavenly body with which the believer longs to

be clothed, is the precise term used for the heavenly bodies from which the fallen angels had disrobed.<sup>12</sup>

The attempt to apply the term "Sons of Elohim" in a broader sense has no textual basis and obscures the precision of its denotative usage. This proves to be an assumption which is antagonistic to the uniform Biblical usage of the term.

## **2. The Daughters of Cain**

The "Daughters of Adam" also does not denote a restriction to the descendants of Cain, but rather the whole human race is clearly intended. These daughters were the daughters born to the men with which this very sentence opens:

And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them, that the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. Genesis 6:1,2

It is clear from the text that these daughters were not limited a particular family or subset, but were, indeed, from (all) the Benoth Adam, "the daughters of Adam." There is no apparent exclusion of the daughters of Seth. Or were they so without charms in contrast with the daughters of Cain? All of Adam's female descendants seem to have been involved. (And what about the "sons of Adam?" Where do they, using this contrived dichotomy, fit in?)

Furthermore, the line of Cain was not necessarily known for its ungodliness. From a study of the naming of Cain's children, many of which included the name of God,<sup>13</sup> it is not clear that they were all necessarily unfaithful.

## **3. The Inferred Lines of Separation**

The concept of separate "lines" itself is suspect and contrary to Scripture.<sup>14</sup> National and racial distinctions were plainly the result of the subsequent intervention of God in Genesis 11, five chapters later. There is no intimation that the lines of Seth and Cain kept themselves separate

nor were even instructed to. The injunction to remain separate was given much later.<sup>15</sup> Genesis 6:12 confirms that all flesh had corrupted His way upon the earth.

#### **4. The Inferred Godliness of Seth**

There is no evidence, stated or implied, that the line of Seth was godly. Only one person was translated from the judgment to come (Enoch) and only eight were given the protection of the ark. No one beyond Noah's immediate family was accounted worthy to be saved. In fact, the text implies that these were distinct from all others. (There is no evidence that the wives of Noah's sons were from the line of Seth.) Even so, Gaebelien observes, "The designation 'Sons of God' is never applied in the Old Testament to believers," whose sonship is "distinctly a New Testament revelation."<sup>16</sup>

The "Sons of Elohim" saw the daughters of men that they were fair and took them wives of all that they chose. It appears that the women had little say in the matter. The domineering implication hardly suggests a godly approach to the union. Even the mention that they saw that they were attractive seems out of place if only normal biology was involved. (And were the daughters of Seth so unattractive?)

It should also be pointed out that the son of Seth himself was Enosh, and there is textual evidence that, rather than a reputation for piety, he seems to have initiated the profaning of the name of God.<sup>17</sup>

If the lines of Seth were so faithful, why did they perish in the flood?

#### **5. The Unnatural Offspring**

The most fatal flaw in the specious "Sethite" view is the emergence of the Nephilim as a result of the unions. (Bending the translation to "giants" does not resolve the difficulties.) It is the offspring of these peculiar unions in Genesis 6:4 which seems to be cited as a primary cause for the Flood.

Procreation by parents of differing religious views do not produce unnatural offspring. Believers marrying unbelievers may produce "monsters," but hardly superhuman, or unnatural, children! It was this unnatural procreation and the resulting abnormal creatures that were designated as a principal reason for the judgment of the Flood.

The very absence of any such adulteration of the human genealogy in Noah's case is also documented in Genesis 6:9: Noah's family tree was distinctively unblemished. The term used, *tamiym*, is used for physical blemishes.<sup>18</sup>

Why were the offspring uniquely designated "mighty" and "men of renown?" This description characterizing the children is not accounted for if the fathers were merely men, even if godly.

A further difficulty seems to be that the offspring were only men; no "women of renown" are mentioned. (Was there a chromosome deficiency among the Sethites? Were there only "Y" chromosomes available in this line?)<sup>19</sup>

## **6. New Testament Confirmations**

"In the mouths of two or three witnesses every word shall be established."<sup>20</sup> In Biblical matters, it is essential to always compare Scripture with Scripture. The New Testament confirmations in Jude and 2 Peter are impossible to ignore.<sup>21</sup>

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell [Tartarus], and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment; And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly; 2 Peter 2:4-5

Peter's comments even establishes the time of the fall of these angels to the days of the Flood of Noah.

Even Peter's vocabulary is provocative. Peter uses the term Tartarus, here translated "hell." This is the only place that this Greek term appears in the Bible. Tartarus is a Greek term for "dark abode of woe"; "the pit of

darkness in the unseen world." As used in Homer's Iliad, it is "...as far beneath hades as the earth is below heaven`."22 In Greek mythology, some of the demigods, Chronos and the rebel Titans, were said to have rebelled against their father, Uranus, and after a prolonged contest they were defeated by Zeus and were condemned into Tartarus.

The Epistle of Jude<sup>23</sup> also alludes to the strange episodes when these "alien" creatures intruded themselves into the human reproductive process:

And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire. Jude 6,7

The allusions to "going after strange flesh," keeping "not their first estate," having "left their own habitation," and "giving themselves over to fornication," seem to clearly fit the alien intrusions of Genesis 6. (The term for habitation, oivkhth,rion, refers to their heavenly bodies from which they had disrobed.<sup>24</sup>)

These allusions from the New Testament would seem to be fatal to the "Sethite" alternative in interpreting Genesis 6. If the intercourse between the "sons of God" and the "daughters of men" were merely marriage between Sethites and Cainites, it seems impossible to explain these passages, and the reason why some fallen angels are imprisoned and others are free to roam the heavenlies.

## **7. Post-Flood Implications**

The strange offspring also continued after the flood: "There were Nephilim in the earth in those days, and also after that..."<sup>25</sup> The "Sethite" view fails to meaningfully address the prevailing conditions "also after that." It offers no insight into the presence of the subsequent "giants" in the land of Canaan.

One of the disturbing aspects of the Old Testament record was God's instructions, upon entering the land of Canaan, to wipe out every man, woman, and child of certain tribes inhabiting the land. This is difficult to justify without the insight of a "gene pool problem" from the remaining Nephilim, Rephaim, et al., which seems to illuminate the difficulty.

## **8. Prophetic Implications**

Another reason that an understanding of Genesis 6 is so essential is that it also is a prerequisite to understanding (and anticipating) Satan's devices<sup>26</sup> and, in particular, the specific delusions to come upon the whole earth as a major feature of end-time prophecy.<sup>27</sup> We will take up these topics in Part 2, "The Return Of The Nephilim.")

### **In Summary**

If one takes an integrated view of the Scripture, then everything in it should "tie together." It is the author's view that the "Angel View," however disturbing, is the clear, direct presentation of the Biblical text, corroborated by multiple New Testament references and was so understood by both early Jewish and Christian scholarship; the "Sethite View" is a contrivance of convenience from a network of unjustified assumptions antagonistic to the remainder of the Biblical record.

It should also be pointed out that most conservative Bible scholars accept the "angel" view.<sup>28</sup> Among those supporting the "angel" view are: G. H. Pember, M. R. DeHaan, C. H. McIntosh, F. Delitzsch, A. C. Gaebelein, A. W. Pink, Donald Grey Barnhouse, Henry Morris, Merrill F. Unger, Arnold Fruchtenbaum, Hal Lindsey, and Chuck Smith, being among the best known.

For those who take the Bible seriously, the arguments supporting the "Angel View" appear compelling. For those who indulge in a willingness to take liberties with the straightforward presentation of the text, no defense can prove final. (And greater dangers than the implications attending these issues await them!)

For further exploration of this critical topic, see the following:



- George Hawkins Pember, *Earth's Earliest Ages*, first published by Hodder and Stoughton in 1875, and presently available by Kregel Publications, Grand Rapids MI, 1975.
- John Fleming, *The Fallen Angels and the Heroes of Mythology*, Hodges, Foster, and Figgis, Dublin, 1879.
- Henry Morris, *The Genesis Record*, Baker Book House, Grand Rapids MI, 1976.
- Merrill F. Unger, *Biblical Demonology*, Scripture Press, Chicago IL, 1952.
- Clarence Larkin, *Spirit World*, Rev. Clarence Larkin Estate, Philadelphia PA, 1921.

- 2. One page 179 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors discuss how the story of giants appearing on earth as a result of “gods” (fallen angels) intermingling with humans and animals is retold in the history of every major civilization of the ancient world. Have you considered that these “myths” from cultures such as Egypt and Greece may have been a crude reference to their knowledge of an earlier time when so-called gods and demigods or “heroes” actually walked the earth, giving birth to giants?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) An interesting and information-rich series of articles on giants was published in 2003 by Mysterious World at the following links (there are more links than these at Mysterious World on the subject):

<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Spring/Giants/>

<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Summer/Giants/>

<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Autumn/Giants/>

<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Winter/Giants/>

<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Spring/Giants/#GiantsInMythAndHistory>

<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Spring/Giants/#GiantsOfTheAncientNearEast>

b) The teacher may find of particular interest a section at the following link THE GREAT SMITHSONIAN COVERUP for discussion in American classes:  
<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Summer/Giants/>

c) The following excerpt from [Apollyon Rising 2012](#) on research by David Flynn may also be of interest:

In 2008, fellow researcher David Flynn may have uncovered important information related to this legend, the size and scope of which simply surpass comprehension. It involves mammoth traces of intelligence carved in stone and covering hundreds of square miles, possibly the strongest evidence ever detected of prehistoric engineering by those who were known and feared throughout the ancient world as gods—the giant offspring of the Watchers.

In the same way modern archeologists only recently found the ruins of hidden Mayan temples in the Guatemalan jungle by using satellites, Flynn employed above-earth orbiting satellites to image a vast network of patterns that surround Lake Titicaca in Bolivia, South America, which extend for more than one hundred miles south into the Bolivian desert. The patterns display geometric repetition and intelligent designs, including interlocking rectangular cells and mounds, perfectly straight lines, and repeated sharp angle turns that do not occur naturally. These cover every topographical feature of the high plateau surrounding the lake, over flood plains, hills, cliffs, and mountains. The full report of this remarkable research plus numerous satellite images is available at [www.ApollyonRising2012.com](http://www.ApollyonRising2012.com).

Twelve miles south of Lake Titicaca, located within the center of the array of geoglyphs, lies the megalithic ruins of Tiahuanaco. Known as the “American Stonehenge” or the “Baalbek of the New World,” its architecture exhibits technological skill that exceeds modern feats of building. At Tiahuanaco, immense stone works were joined with modular

fittings and complex breach-locking levels that have never been seen in any other ancient culture. According to engineers, one of the largest single stones ever to be moved and put into building anywhere on earth (about four hundred tons) was transported to Tiahuanaco from a quarry over two hundred miles away. This feat is even more incomprehensible when one realizes the route of transport was through a mountain range up to fifteen thousand feet.

Conventional historians try to assign the age of the structures at Tiahuanaco to around 600 BC, postulating that a pre-Inca civilization, without benefit of the wheel, modern tools, or even a written language constructed these architectural marvels. But the historian Arthur Posnansky studied the area for more than fifty years and observed that sediment had been deposited over the site to the depth of six feet. Within this overburden, produced by a massive flood of water sometime around the Pleistocene age (thirteen thousand years ago), fossilized human skulls were unearthed together with seashells and remnants of tropical plants. The skulls have nearly three times the cranial capacity of modern man and are displayed in the La Paz museum in Bolivia. In addition, when the first Spanish chroniclers arrived with the conquistador Pizarro, the Inca explained that Tiahuanaco had been constructed by a race of giants called "Huaris" before Chamak-pacha, the "period of darkness," and was already in ruins before their civilization began. They said these giants had been created by Viracocha ("Kukulcan" to the Maya and "Quetzalcoatl" to the Aztecs), the god who came from the heavens (a.k.a. the Watchers).

He (Viracocha) created animals and a race of giants. These beings enraged the Lord, and he turned them into stone. Then he flooded the earth till all was under water, and all life extinguished. This flood was called *uñu pachacuti*, by the Inca which means "water that overturns the land." They say that it rained sixty days and nights, that it drowned all created things, and that there alone remained some vestiges of those who were turned into stones. Viracocha rose from the bosom of Lake Titicaca, and presided over the erection of those wondrous cities whose ruins still dot its islands and western shores, and whose history is totally lost in the night of time.

Inca mythology involving giants, followed by world deluge, agree with similar legends from the Maya, Olmec, and Aztec cultures of Mexico. These stories are consistent with Sumerian and Hebrew accounts of the Flood and of the giant nephilim whose history of human sacrifices also parallel Mayan rituals (victims of Maya had their arms and legs held down while a priest cut their chests open and ripped out their hearts). The Greeks likewise recorded how prehistoric giants were responsible for the creation of megalithic structures discovered around the world, and Islamic folklore ascribes this prehistoric “building” activity to a race of super beings called “jinn” (genies):

The Jinn were before Adam: They built huge cities whose ruins still stand in forgotten places.

In Egypt, the Edfu temple texts, believed to predate the Egyptians themselves, explain something of additional significance, reminiscent of nephilim activity before and after the Flood:

The most ancient of earth’s temples and monuments were built to bring about the resurrection of the destroyed world of the gods.

Within the Inca religious paradigm, the oldest record of the Andean region available, the Tiahuanaco geoglyphs are therefore viewed as the vestiges of a lost civilization that knew its destiny...to be destroyed by world cataclysm. In this regard, the geoglyphs serve not only as a memorial of an ancient existence, but also as a warning for future humanity and the return of a destructive epoch, or as David Flynn concludes:

The geoglyphs seem to be physical evidence that supports the Middle and South American myths of world deluge and giants. Their discovery in modern times fits Inca and Mayan prophecies of an “awakening” to knowledge of the ancient past, of the “builder gods” and of their return. It is perhaps testament to the accuracy of these prophecies that the date, December 21, 2012, is known so widely in modern times...the end of the Mayan calendar.

- d) The teacher may wish to share some of the pictures at the following link: The Mysterious Gigantic Megaliths of Baalbek Temples <http://www.hottnez.com/the-mysterious-gigantic-megaliths-of-baalbeck-temples/> (check out the 1500 ton stone and ask yourself how these were carved and moved into location).

- 3. In addition to giants, the authors of Forbidden Gates discuss how these “demigods” were accompanied in ancient texts and idol representations by half-animal half-human creatures such as centaurs, chimeras, furies, satyrs and other genetic aberrations. Can such records be looked upon as rough documentation of a line that was once crossed via genetic engineering, resulting in God’s judgment and the Great Flood?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may benefit from the related research in the book, *The Gods Who Walk Among Us*, available as a free pdf download at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)
- b) Versions of some of the ancient books cited by the authors on pages 179-183 are available at ForbiddenGate.com here:

**The Book of Enoch** <http://www.forbiddengate.com/BookOfEnoch.pdf>

**The Book of Jubilees** <http://www.forbiddengate.com/Jubilees.pdf>

**The Book of Jasher** <http://www.forbiddengate.com/Jasher.pdf>

- c) Discuss with the class the premise as outlined in *Forbidden Gates* on pages 179-183 and then explain how for the first time since the Great Flood, science is now repeating the blending of animals with humans as well as “the mixture of animals one with the other” in modern labs around the world. The following news stories will help verify this:

<http://www.physorg.com/news194539934.html>

<http://dsc.discovery.com/technology/tech-10/genetic-engineering/10-transgenic-animals-print.html>

[http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2002/01/0103\\_020103TVclonedpig.html](http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2002/01/0103_020103TVclonedpig.html)

<http://www.wired.com/dangerroom/2009/12/pentagon-zombie-pigs-first-then-hibernating-gis/>

<http://www.reuters.com/article/idUSTRE5A900R20091110>

<http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/articles/A63731-2004Nov19.html>

4. If the authors of *Forbidden Gates* are correct in their concern that modern science may be repeating what the Watchers did in crossing over the species barrier, would you agree that we may be witnessing the fulfillment of biblical prophecy, especially in regard to Matthew 24:37 “as it was in the days of Noah”? Does this mean we could see the return of mythological beings?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

a) The teacher should divide this question into the following 3 parts:

1. We are seeing the development of science now for bringing back extinct creatures. As examples of this possibility, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* cite the following facts on pages 185-186 of their book:
  - In 2009, blood was extracted from the bone of a dinosaur that scientists insist is eighty million years old.  
<http://www.wnd.com/?pageId=96681>
  - The Pyrenean ibex, an extinct form of wild mountain goat, was brought back to life in 2009 through cloning of DNA taken from skin samples. <http://www.telegraph.co.uk/science/science-news/4409958/Extinct-ibex-is-resurrected-by-cloning.html>

- In June of 2010 by researchers at Jeju National University in Korea cloning a bull that had been dead for two years.  
<http://joongangdaily.joins.com/article/view.asp?aid=2921956>
  - Cloning methods are also being studied for use in bringing back Tasmanian tigers, woolly mammoths, and other extinct creatures.  
[http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2005/04/0408\\_050408\\_woollymammoth.html](http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2005/04/0408_050408_woollymammoth.html)
  - In the March/April 2010 edition of the respected Archaeology magazine, a feature article by Zah Zorich (“Should We Clone Neanderthals?”) called for the resurrection via cloning of what some consider to be man’s closest extinct relative, the Neanderthals.  
<http://www.archaeology.org/1003/etc/neanderthals.html>
  - National Geographic confirmed this possibility in its May 2009 special report, “Recipe for a Resurrection,” quoting Hendrik Poinar of McMaster University, an authority on ancient DNA who served as a scientific consultant for the movie Jurassic Park, saying: “I laughed when Steven Spielberg said that cloning extinct animals was inevitable. But I’m not laughing anymore.... This is going to happen. It’s just a matter of working out the details.”  
<http://ngm.nationalgeographic.com/2009/05/cloned-species/mueller-text>
2. Could this also lead to the return of Watchers offspring? Nephilim? Gibborim? What do you make of the examples of this possibility from Chapter Nine of Forbidden Gates, which included:
- Isaiah 13:1-3, 9, 19-22 from the Septuagint
  - 2 Esdras 5:8 (apocryphal)
  - Jubilees 10:7-12 (apocryphal)
  - Joel 2:2-11

- Revelation 9:7-19
  - Daniel 2:43
  - Genesis 10 and 11 and the story of Nimrod
3. And finally on this question, could this science lead to the “resurrection” of and/or the coming of the Antichrist?

(The teacher may benefit from the following excerpts from [Apollyon Rising 2012](#))

This manipulation of living tissue by the fallen angels led to an unusual body made up of human, animal, and plant genetics known as nephilim, an “earth-born” facsimile or “fit extension” into which they could incarnate. What’s more, the long history of demonological phenomenon related to manipulation of biological matter suggests that versions of this curious activity have been ongoing ever since.

Former college professor and BBC correspondent, Dr. I. D. E. Thomas, in his highly recommended book, [The Omega Conspiracy](#), chronicled the burgeoning of so-called “alien abduction” activity and tied it to end-time prophecy concerning the return of the nephilim. Documentation by “abductees” worldwide and the stories of DNA harvesting by “aliens” reminded him of the history of biological misuse by the Watchers, and led Thomas to conclude that the identity of the Watchers and whoever the alien entities are were somehow connected. Dr. Thomas told me personally that the special desire by these unknown agents for human and animal molecular matter “would explain why animals have been killed, mutilated, and stolen by the aliens in UFO flap areas.” Respected UFO researcher, Dr. Jacques F. Vallée, raised similar questions.

In order to materialize and take definite form, these entities seem to require a source of energy...a living thing...a human medium.... Our sciences have not reached a point where they can offer us any kind of working hypothesis for this process. But we can speculate that these beings need living energy which they can



reconstruct into physical form. Perhaps that is why dogs and animals tend to vanish in flap areas. Perhaps the living cells of those animals are somehow used by the ultraterrestrials to create forms which we can see and sense with our limited perceptions.

Like Thomas, Vallée connected this activity with the legendary acts of the Watchers.

Are we dealing...with a parallel universe, another dimension, where there are...races only semi-human, so that in order to maintain contact with us, they need cross-breeding with men and woman of our planet? Is this the origin of the many tales and legends where genetics play a great role:...the fairy tales involving human midwives and changelings, the sexual overtones of the flying saucer reports, the Biblical stories of intermarriage between the Lord's angels and terrestrial women, whose offspring were giants?

Whether or not there is a connection between the ancient power behind the Watcher narrative and the modern "alien abduction" activity documented by Vallée and others involving biological harvesting from humans and animals, records from antiquity include mysterious possibilities regarding the ability of the Watchers' deceased offspring to return to "physical form" at particular moments in time. The relationship between the rephaim—the giant occupants of Canaan (of which Og, King of Bashan whose bed was eighteen feet long belonged)—and the nephilim becomes important here, as the rephaim were associated by the ancients with the "shades of the dead," including nephilim in Sheol. The meaning of the word "rephaim" is especially germane, as it carries with it the idea "to heal" or "to be healed" as in a "resurrection" from the place of the dead, Sheol-Hades. In Hebrew, the seraphim were powerful angels whose name combined ser, meaning "a higher being or angel," and rapha, "to heal." This connotes angels of healing or those that can be healed. The rephaim may therefore be considered seraphim, which followed Lucifer in the fall.

In the Ras Shamra texts, the rephaim were described as demigods who worshipped the Amorite god Ba'al, the ruler of the underworld. When

rephaim died, their spirits went into the underworld, where they joined Ba'al's acolyte assembly of lesser gods, kings, heroes, and rulers. These beings had the power to return from the dead through reincarnation into bodily form as nephilim. As Mysterious World in "Giants in the Earth" also included, "The Rephaim giants were specifically noted by Moses as being the return of the antediluvian Nephilim, that the Rephaim were in fact the reincarnations of the demonic spirits of the Nephilim giants who had been destroyed in the Flood." A surprise to many Bible students would be to learn that the prophet Isaiah may have considered this Amorite dogma factual, and that he tied the power of these beings to the king of Babylon and Lucifer himself. After prophesying against the Babylonian leader, Isaiah says in parallel to rephaim theology:

Hell [Sheol-Hades] from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead [rapha, raphaim] for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations. And they shall speak and say unto thee, Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us? (Isaiah 14:9–10)

Immediately following this statement, Isaiah looked beyond the rephaim at who their Ba'al actually was, identifying him in verse 12, saying, "How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning!" Other places in the Bible such as Job 26:5 may agree with the idea of a luciferian power that can, under some circumstances, return rephaim from the underworld to physical bodies known as nephilim. "Dead things are formed from under the waters," Job says. The dead in this text are rapha (rephaim), and the phrase "are formed" is from "chawl," meaning to twist or whirl as in a double helix coil or genetic manufacturing. The startling implication of this and similar texts is that beneath the surface of earth, agents of darkness wait the moment of their return. Before the end of this book, we shall consider several ancient documents and Scriptures that seem to forecast such a terrifying event for the end times.

**[and a little later in Apollyon Rising 2012]**

Could the same technology described above or some variation lead to the resurrection of the pagan deity Apollo/Osiris/Nimrod, who returns to rule

the novus order seclorum? Is material from the deity's "body" concealed in a tomb at Giza...or in Washington DC...or in the "sacred casket" that former U.S. Vice President Henry Wallace mentioned in his letter to Nicholas Roerich, considered in esoteric circles to be the same as the casket or "coffin" of Osiris? If so, is it conceivable that plans to revive the Apollonian tissue using biotechnology have already been made—or worse, have already been accomplished and the pagan god waits the moment of its unveiling?

People not familiar with biblical eschatology may find this idea fantastic, that the being who becomes the Antichrist was once alive, then was dead, and returns from the grave to rule the novus ordo seclorum. But this is exactly what Revelation 17:8 appears to say will happen: "The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition [Apoleia, Apollo]: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder...when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is."

Further, the mythos of the Eye of Horus on the Great Seal, which so fascinated Wallace and company, represents this very concept of deity incarnation into the "king" that is to rule. As mentioned in chapter seven of this book, in ancient Egypt where this Great Seal symbol originated, each Pharaoh "became" the incarnation of the falcon god Horus during his lifetime, and at death, the Osiris—the divine judge of the netherworld.

As biotechnology and synthetic biology advance to the degree that we can now realistically anticipate reviving long-dead species, I have been able to convince a few scholarly minds that the man of sin could in fact be the return of a deceased Apollo/Osiris/Nimrod who arrives via biotech resurrection. Even Chuck Missler, though not with the same details, raised the appropriate question not long ago in an online article about the Antichrist. He asked, "Could it be that this final world dictator will be, in some sense, a return of Nimrod?"

In my opinion, this is more than a possibility, and I remember with curiosity how in 1998, Zahi Hawass, the current secretary general of Egypt's Supreme Council of Antiquities, claimed to have found the burial

tomb of the god Osiris (Apollo/Nimrod) at the Giza Plateau. In the article, "Sandpit of Royalty," from the newspaper Extra Bladet (Copenhagen), January 31, 1999, Hawass was quoted saying:

I have found a shaft, going twenty-nine meters vertically down into the ground, exactly halfway between the Chefred Pyramid and the Sphinx. At the bottom, which was filled with water, we have found a burial chamber with four pillars. In the middle is a large granite sarcophagus, which I expect to be the grave of Osiris, the god.... I have been digging in Egypt's sand for more than thirty years, and up to date this is the most exciting discovery I have made.... We found the shaft in November and began pumping up the water recently. So several years will pass before we have finished investigating the find.

As far as we know, this discovery did not ultimately provide the physical remains of the deity. Of course, that is as far as we know. But what it did illustrate is that at least some very powerful Egyptologists believe Osiris was a historical figure, and that his body was stored somewhere at or near the Great Pyramid. Manly P. Hall, who knew the Masonic legend of Hiram Abiff was a thinly veiled prophecy of the resurrection of Osiris, may have understood what Zahi Hawass was looking for, and why. Consider that he wrote in *The Secret Teachings of All Ages*:

The Dying God shall rise again! The secret room in the House of the Hidden Places shall be rediscovered. The Pyramid again shall stand as the ideal emblem of solidarity, inspiration, aspiration, resurrection, and regeneration.

Over the years, biblical scholar Gary Stearman has written extensively about Nimrod (Apollo/Osiris/Gilgamesh) and the connection this historical figure has with Babylonian Mystery Religion, Watchers, nephilim (including their resurrection), the spirit of the end-times Antichrist, and revival of paganism. It appears he, too, believes the coming of Antichrist represents a return of Nimrod. "But who is this Assyrian[?]" he asked in the July 2001 *Prophecy in the News Magazine*. "He is none other than the spiritual inheritor of the first great post-Flood religious apostasy. He is the keeper of the great heritage that began at

the Assyrian capital, Nineveh. Its founder was Nimrod.... He is the Antichrist, the future despot who comes in the name of the ancient mystery religion.”

A year earlier, in June of 2000, Stearman had written in Prophecy in the News concerning Nimrod:

He was a rebel who allowed himself to be worshipped as a god. After the Flood, his rebellion became the foundation of mankind’s greatest religious apostasy. Down through the generations, this system of false worship became known simply as the “Babylonian Mystery Religion. Its basis is quite clear. *It attempts to channel the power of the ancient gods through the figure of one, powerful man. Nimrod became that god* [emphasis added].

Alexander Hislop, in his classic text, *The Two Babylons*, substantiates Stearman’s thesis that the Babylonian Mystery Religion was based on the worship of Nimrod. “It was to glorify Nimrod that the whole Chaldean system of iniquity was formed,” he wrote. Yet Stearman sees that the Mystery Religion continued secretly through the ages, shrouded in hiding by adepts of the occult in anticipation of a final moment when the ancient spirit should be awakened:

Corrupt priesthoods have flourished, carrying with them the shadow of Nimrod and his ancient mysteries. Their inner secrets have been known by various names, including alchemy, magic, sorcery, conjuring, soothsaying and so forth.... waiting for the prophesied day when it would rise once again. This movement will result in the reign of the Antichrist.

In addition to the supernatural aspects biotechnology could provide the luciferian technology to resurrect the Nimrod/Apollo/Osiris character in the person of the last-days Man of Sin, the ramifications of using the same science to revive extinct animals or nephilim, or to create newly engineered versions of demigods and mythological animals, may also play a key role in the kingdom of Antichrist. This is because as interbreeding begins between transgenic animals, genetically modified humans, and species as God made them, the altered DNA will quickly migrate into the

natural environment, and when that happens (as is already occurring among genetically modified plants and animals), “alien” and/or animal characteristics will be introduced to the human gene pool and spread through intermarriage, altering the human genetic code and eventually eliminating humanity as we know it. This is what happened before the Great Flood, according to many theologians, and perhaps that has been the whole idea for the end-times as well—to create a generation of genetically altered “Nimrods” to serve as “fit extensions” for the resurrection of underworld nephilim-hordes in preparation of Armageddon....

Given that the prophets foretold a day when mythical characters and “gods” would return to earth to conduct war against the God of the Bible, it is more than a little disturbing that man has, for the first time since before the Great Flood, intentionally set course to repeat what ancient records say the Watchers did. The accelerated pace by scientific exploration against God’s divine order, and the subsequent revival of Watcher technology leading to transhuman or revived forms of nephilim, has without doubt pushed the end-times clock closer to midnight than most comprehend.

- 5. In addition to verses from the Bible and Apocrypha texts predicting a return of transhuman “Watcher science” at the end times, on page 192 of *Forbidden Gates* under the subtitle “Biblical Example of Nephilim Resurrection,” the authors mention the research from their book *Apollyon Rising 2012* concerning Nimrod, the original character who later was mythologized as the god Apollo prophesied by the apostle Paul in the New Testament and by the occult elite on the Great Seal of the United States as the ancient spirit that will return to earth to rule the *novus ordo seclorum*. Were you aware that the prophecy on the Great Seal, which came from the Sibyl of Apollo, predicts that Apollo / Nimrod will return when he receives “the life of gods, and sees Heroes with gods commingling?” A pagan savior born of “a new breed of men sent down from heaven” when “heroes” and “gods” are blended together? This sounds eerily similar to what the Watchers did during the creation of nephilim and to what scientists are doing this century through genetic engineering of human-animal chimeras. Thus there are ancient records, scriptures, and even government seals that predict a revival of what the Watchers did at end times.**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

a) Below is a section from Apollyon Rising 2012 explaining this prophecy:

The third and most indisputable authentication that the Great Seal's symbols and mottoes are in fact a hidden prophesy concerning the return of Apollo is *novus ordo seclorum* ("a new order of the ages"), adapted by Charles Thomson in 1782 when designing the Great Seal. According to the official record, Thomson—a friend of the Masons and great supporter of Benjamin Franklin's American Philosophical Society—created the phrase from inspiration he found in a prophetic line in Virgil's Eclogue IV: *Magnus ab integro seclorum nascitur ordo* (Virgil's Eclogue IV, line 5), the interpretation of the original Latin being, "And the majestic roll of circling centuries begins anew."

...upon reading Virgil's text, it is abundantly clear whom the prophets of Apollo was talking about. The divine son, which comes of the Sibyl's prophecy, is to be spawned of "a new breed of men sent down from heaven" (what Roosevelt, Wallace, and Roerich were looking for) when he receives "the life of gods, and sees Heroes with gods commingling." According to the prophecy, this is Apollo, son of Jupiter (Zeus), who returns to earth through mystical "life" given to him from the gods when the deity Saturn (Saturn is the Roman version of the biblical Satan) returns to reign over the earth in a new Pagan Golden Age.

From the beginning of the prophecy we read:

Now the last age by Cumae's Sibyl sung  
Has come and gone, and the majestic roll  
Of circling centuries begins anew: Justice returns,  
returns old Saturn's reign, With a new breed of men sent down  
from heaven. Only do thou, at the boy's birth in whom  
The iron shall cease, the golden race arise, Befriend him, chaste Lucina; 'tis  
thine own Apollo reigns.

He shall receive the life of gods, and see Heroes with gods  
commingling, and himself Be seen of them, and with his father's  
worth Reign o'er a world....

Assume thy greatness, for the time draws nigh, Dear child  
of gods, great progeny of Jove [Jupiter/Zeus]! See how it totters—  
the world's orb'd might, Earth, and wide ocean, and the vault  
profound, All, see, enraptured of the coming time!

According to Virgil and the Cumaean Sibyl, whose prophecy formed the *novus ordo seclorum* of the Great Seal of the United States, the New World Order begins during a time of chaos when the earth and oceans are tottering—a time like today. This is when the “son” of promise arrives on earth—Apollo incarnate—a pagan savior born of “a new breed of men sent down from heaven” when “heroes” and “gods” are blended together. This sounds eerily similar to what the Watchers did during the creation of nephilim and to what scientists are doing this century through genetic engineering of human-animal chimeras.

To understand why such a fanciful prophecy about Apollo, son of Jupiter, returning to earth should be important to you, in ancient literature, Jupiter was the Roman replacement of Yahweh as the greatest of the gods—a “counter-Yahweh.” His son Apollo is a replacement of Jesus, a “counter-Jesus.” This Apollo comes to rule the final New World Order, when “Justice returns, returns old Saturn’s [Satan’s] reign.” The ancient goddess Justice, who returns Satan’s reign (*Saturnia regna*, the pagan golden age), was known to the Egyptians as Ma’at and to the Greeks as Themis, while to the Romans she was *Lustitia*. Statues and reliefs of her adorn thousands of government buildings and courts around the world, especially in Washington DC, as familiar Lady Justice, blindfolded and holding scales and a sword. She represents the enforcement of secular law and is, according to the Sibyl’s conjure, the authority that will require global compliance to the zenith of Satan’s authority concurrent with the coming of Apollo. What’s more, the Bible’s accuracy concerning this subject is alarming, including the idea that “pagan justice” will require surrender to a satanic system in a final world order under the rule of Jupiter’s son.

In the New Testament, the identity of the god Apollo, repeat-coded in the Great Seal of the United States as the Masonic “messiah” who returns to rule the earth, is the same spirit—verified by the same name—that will inhabit the political leader of the end-times New World Order. According



to a key prophecy in the book of 2 Thessalonians, the Antichrist will be the progeny or incarnation of the ancient spirit, Apollo. Second Thessalonians 2:3 warns: “Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition [Apoleia; Apollyon, Apollo].” Numerous scholarly and classical works identify “Apollyon” as the god “Apollo”—the Greek deity “of death and pestilence,” and Webster’s Dictionary points out that “Apollyon” was a common variant of “Apollo” until recent history. An example of this is found in the classical play by the ancient Greek playwright Aeschylus, *The Agamemnon* of Aeschylus, in which Cassandra repeats more than once, “Apollo, thou destroyer, O Apollo, Lord of fair streets, Apollyon to me.” Accordingly, the name Apollo turns up in ancient literature with the verb *apollymi* or *apollyo* (destroy), and scholars including W. R. F. Browning believe apostle Paul may have identified the god Apollo as the “spirit of Antichrist” operating behind the persecuting Roman emperor, Domitian, who wanted to be recognized as “Apollo incarnate” in his day. Such identifying of Apollo with despots and “the spirit of Antichrist” is consistent even in modern history. For instance, note how Napoleon’s name literally translates “the true Apollo.”

Revelation 17:8 directly ties the coming of Antichrist with Apollo, revealing that the Beast shall ascend from the bottomless pit and enter him:

The Beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the Bottomless Pit, and go into perdition [Apolia, Apollo]: and they that dwell on the Earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the Book of Life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the Beast that was, and is not, and yet is.

Abaddon is another name for Apollo (Revelation 9:11), identified historically as the king of demonic “locusts” (Revelation 9:1–11). This means among other things that Apollo is the end-times angel or “king of the abyss” who opens the bottomless pit, out of which an army of transgenic locusts erupts upon earth:

And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power. And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads. And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man. And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them. And the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as the teeth of lions. And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months. And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon. (Revelation 9: 1–11)

In view of this text, we recall how Zeus—the Greek identity for the father of Apollo—was acknowledged as Satan in Revelation 2:12–13. The fallen angel, Apollo, who unlocks the bottomless pit and unleashes the thunderous hoards of Great Tribulation locusts, is therefore none other than the son of Satan and the spirit that will inhabit Antichrist. This means the first part of the final mystery of the Great Seal of the United States is a prophecy, hidden in plain sight by the U.S. government for more than two hundred years, foretelling the return of a terrifying demonic god who seizes control of earth in the new order of the ages. This supernatural entity was known and feared in ancient times by different names: Apollo, Osiris, and even farther back as Nimrod, whom Masons consider to be the father of their institution. The second part of

the final mystery of the Great Seal of the United States will unveil when Apollo is scheduled to arrive, according to the seal's cipher.

Not to put too fine a point on it, but if the reader doubts the authority of the Scriptures cited above concerning the coming of Apollo as Antichrist or the dedication of the occult hierarchy to bring the prophecy on the Great Seal about, the "illuminated ones" have you right where they want you. In contrast, by understanding the considerable implications of these prophecies, you can better discern why Freemason David Ovason, whose work earned praise from Fred Kleinknecht, Sovereign Grand Commander of the 33rd-Degree Supreme Council of Freemasons in Washington DC, said the dedication of the U.S. Capitol building cornerstone had to be done at the appropriate astrological time, when Jupiter was rising in Scorpio.

Jupiter is rising, and Scorpio, which symbolizes wrath, is ruled by Pluto, god of the underworld. Jupiter (Satan) is rising in wrath...or, as Revelation 12:12 puts it, Satan is coming in "great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time." All of which begs the question: Why have multiple references to novus ordo seclorum by Congress members, U.S. presidents, international bankers, CFR members, and other illuminatus been exponentially increasing around the world over the last decade, and why did Barack Obama feel compelled to herald the inauguration of his administration by constructing a replica of the Great Altar of Zeus, the father of Apollo? Is it because an occult elite knows something about the imminent fulfillment of the Illuminati-Masonic prophecy involving a false yahweh (Zeus/Jupiter) and his false christ (Apollo) coming with the full force of pagan justice, when Satan's (Saturn's) reign over the world reaches its apex in the New World Order?

- 6. Would you agree with the authors of Forbidden Gates that even if modern genetic sciences are not repeating the sins of the Watchers, by crossing over species barriers and creating unnatural forms of life – from synthetic microorganisms to transgenic animals and genetically modified foods – significant danger is raised?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) The teacher could end this class by pointing out how neither natural evolution nor biblical creation allowed for what men are doing today via the biotech revolution. Thus regardless of a person's worldview, we have entered uncharted waters, a time that at a minimum could throw off the balance of nature and open gateways for a variety of new disease strains and/or biological hazards.
  
- b) Could this be what is implied in such prophetic verses as Zech 14:12 where it says: "And this shall be the plague wherewith the LORD will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem; Their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their holes, and their tongue shall consume away in their mouth."

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK NINE

(Read chapter nine of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. The ninth chapter of Forbidden Gates opens with discussion of “the Watchers” and their offspring, the Nephilim or giants of the Old Testament. How familiar are you with this history and the numerous ancient texts surrounding these legendary beings?
2. On page 179 of Forbidden Gates, the authors discuss how the story of giants appearing on earth as a result of “gods” (fallen angels) intermingling with humans and animals is retold in the history of every major civilization of the ancient world. Have you considered that these “myths” from cultures such as Egypt and Greece may have been a crude reference to their knowledge of an earlier time when so-called gods and demigods or “heroes” actually walked the earth, giving birth to giants?
3. In addition to giants, the authors of Forbidden Gates discuss how these “demigods” were accompanied in ancient texts and idol representations by half-animal half-human creatures such as centaurs, chimeras, furies, satyrs and other genetic aberrations. Can such records be looked upon as rough documentation of a line that was once crossed via genetic engineering, resulting in God’s judgment and the Great Flood?
4. If the authors of Forbidden Gates are correct in their concern that modern science may be repeating what the Watchers did in crossing over the species barrier, would you agree that we may be witnessing the fulfillment of biblical prophecy, especially in regard to Matthew 24:37 “as it was in the days of Noah”? Does this mean we could see the return of mythological beings?
5. In addition to verses from the Bible and Apocrypha texts predicting a return of transhuman “Watcher science” at the end times, on page 192 of Forbidden Gates under the subtitle “Biblical Example of Nephilim Resurrection,” the authors mention the research from their book Apollyon Rising 2012 concerning Nimrod, the original character who later was mythologized as the god Apollo prophesied by the apostle Paul in the New Testament and by the occult elite on the Great Seal of the United States as the ancient spirit that will return to earth to rule the novus ordo seclorum. Were you aware that the prophecy on the Great Seal, which came from the Sibyl of Apollo, predicts that Apollo / Nimrod will return when he receives “the life of gods, and sees Heroes with gods **commingling**?” A pagan savior born of “a new breed of men sent down from heaven” when “heroes” and “gods” are blended together? This sounds eerily similar to what the Watchers did during the creation of nephilim and to what scientists are doing this century through genetic engineering of human-animal chimeras. Thus there are ancient records, scriptures and even government seals that predict a revival of what the Watchers did, set for end times.
6. Would you agree with the authors of Forbidden Gates that even if modern genetic sciences are not repeating the sins of the Watchers, by crossing over species barriers and creating unnatural forms of life – from synthetic microorganisms to transgenic animals and genetically modified foods – significant danger is raised?

# LESSON #10

## THE TRANSHUMAN NEW FACE OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Have the study group read chapter ten of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSES:** 2 Corinthians 10:4-5; Isaiah 26:3

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #10 is to discuss how emerging technology represents a new battlefield regarding the mind and gives rise to the need for fresh understanding of “shielding” our minds from secular and intangible influences.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter ten of Forbidden Gates opens by quoting a New York Times article on the nonprofit organization, the *Lifeboat Foundation* whose mission is to imagine previously unknown threat scenarios arising as a result of new technologies, against which “shields” will need to be devised to protect mankind. Though operated by transhumanists, in its own way, the Lifeboat Foundation can be viewed as giving a clarion call similar to that made in the study book, *Forbidden Gates*; i.e. the need to recognize that creation-altering sciences and genetic engineering of new or altered life forms represents a different kind of danger than previous generations faced.

- 1. The tenth chapter of Forbidden Gates begins by quoting a New York Times article about the nonprofit nongovernmental organization, *The Lifeboat Foundation*, whose mission is to encourage “scientific advancements while helping humanity survive existential risks and possible misuse of increasingly powerful technologies, including genetic engineering, nanotechnology, and robotics/AI, as we move towards the Singularity.” Were you aware of this foundation and what do you make of their ambitious plans?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) If the teacher has web access, we highly recommend visiting <http://lifeboat.com/ex/main> and becoming familiar with the organization and its leaders. The teacher may wish to read the Mission Statement to the class from the site, which says:

The Lifeboat Foundation is a nonprofit nongovernmental organization dedicated to encouraging scientific advancements while helping humanity survive existential risks and possible misuse of increasingly powerful technologies, including genetic engineering, nanotechnology, and robotics/AI, as we move towards the Singularity.

Lifeboat Foundation is pursuing a variety of options, including helping to accelerate the development of technologies to defend humanity, including new methods to combat viruses (such as RNA interference and new vaccine methods), effective nanotechnological defensive strategies, and even self-sustaining space colonies in case the other defensive strategies fail.

We believe that, in some situations, it might be feasible to relinquish technological capacity in the public interest (for example, we are against the U.S. government posting the recipe for the 1918 flu virus on the Internet). We have some of the best minds on the planet working on programs to enable our survival. We invite you to join our cause!

- b) The article quoted by the authors of Forbidden Gates (“The Lifeboat Foundation: Battling Asteroids, Nanobots and A.I.”) can be read online here: <http://bits.blogs.nytimes.com/2010/07/20/the-lifeboat-foundation-battling-asteroids-nanobots-and-a-i/>
- c) Perhaps also make the point that the guiding members of the Lifeboat Foundation are believers in the “Singularity” (discussed in Lesson #7) and techno-progressives. While they state that some technological information or capacity should be voluntarily relinquished, they recognize it is highly unlikely and even impractical to expect all nations of the world to keep a lid on the profound risks represented by the example in their mission statement – the recipe for the 1918 flu virus – and/or worse biological hazards represented in these new fields of science, thus the need by such as their

organization to begin imagining or developing “shields” to protect humanity against the “forbidden” gates being opened.

2. **On page 203, the authors of Forbidden Gates say “futurist think tanks such as the Lifeboat Foundation understand that the phrase, ‘those who fail to learn from history are doomed to repeat it’ is axiomatic for a reason. Human nature has a clear track record of developing defense mechanisms only after natural or manufactured threats have led to catastrophe. We humans seem doomed to learn from our mistakes far more often than from prevention.” Why do you think this is true, and what does this suggest for our future, given the unprecedented threats posed by the emerging fields of technology you have been studying?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Ask the class to discuss the illustrations the authors provide concerning how humans seem doomed to learn from our mistakes far more often than from prevention 1) how nuclear reactors were forced to become safer only after the Chernobyl disaster; and 2) how a tsunami warning system was developed by the United Nations following 230,000 people being killed by a titanic wave in the Indian Ocean. Another example would be how plans to bolster flood defenses around New Orleans “are still being thrashed out, five years after hurricane Katrina killed nearly 2,000 and left thousands more homeless. In each case, the risks were known, but they were only acted on after the event.” Can you or class members think of other examples?
- b) The teacher may wish to point out how we see this same propensity in our children, as most kids learn the same lessons, make the same mistakes, and often suffer the same corrections their older siblings and even parents had to learn.
- c) An article at the UK Guardian on this subject matter can provide numerous talking points on the subject should the teacher choose to print and read or reference it. The article is titled “Global disaster: is humanity prepared for the worst?” and can be located online here:



<http://www.guardian.co.uk/science/2010/jul/25/disaster-risk-assessment-science>

- d) The teacher may wish to discuss the meaning of “existential risks” raised in the Guardian article above as well as by the authors of Forbidden Gates by reminding the class of Bill Joy’s concerns, which the teacher may have discussed in Lesson #8 using the 11 page article at Wired Magazine “Why the future doesn’t need us” found at the following link:  
<http://www.wired.com/wired/archive/8.04/joy.html>.

- e) The brief statement below from Wikipedia may also be helpful:

**Existential risk** [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Existential\\_risk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Existential_risk)

In futures studies, an existential risk is a risk that is both global (affects all of humanity) and terminal (destroys or irreversibly cripples the target). Nick Bostrom defines an existential risk as a risk "where an adverse outcome would either annihilate Earth-originating intelligent life or permanently and drastically curtail its potential." The term is frequently used in transhumanist and Singularitarian communities to describe disaster and doomsday scenarios caused by bioterrorism, non-friendly artificial intelligence, nuclear war, misuse of molecular nanotechnology, current climate change and ongoing global warming, or other sources of danger.

Among the grimmest warnings of existential risks from advanced technology are those of computer scientist Bill Joy, who envisages the possibility of global destruction as new technologies become increasingly powerful and uncontrollable, and Martin Rees who has written about an extensive range of risks to human survival.

While transhumanism advocates the development of advanced technologies to enhance human physical and mental powers, transhumanist thinkers typically acknowledge that the same technologies could bring existential risks. Generally, transhumanism holds that the potential benefits are at least equal in scope and magnitude to the existential risks (or that the risky technology would be impossible to

prevent regardless), and many transhumanists, including Bostrom, are actively engaged in consideration of how these risks might best be reduced or mitigated.

Joel Garreau's book *Radical Evolution* contains extensive discussion of possible existential risks (and possible radical benefits) from emerging technologies.

- 3. The difference between the threats previous generations faced (nuclear arms for instance) and what mankind faces today is clearly understood by most secular researchers including transhumanists regarding how the emerging threats are “alive” and can self-multiply – as in living biological weapons or godlike artificial intelligence soon to arrive via technological singularity. But where most of the government reports, academic materials, and think tanks fail is in lacking to appreciate that man is not just a series of biological functions. We are spirit and soul and vulnerable to spiritual, not just environmental, issues. Thus the “shields” that the Lifeboat Foundation are working to create could only protect us so far. We will need spiritual shields too as GRIN raises those bigger issues of how human-transforming enhancements may alter man’s very soul (says Joel Garreau) as well as raise hundreds of immediate new challenges that Christians, families, and ministries are unprepared for. Write down 5 ways in which you can imagine creation-altering science (including human enhancement) affecting the spiritual nature of your home and community.**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) The teacher should lead the class in discussing the ways they believe GRIN tech and transhumanism will “change the game” in raising families, living in communities, conducting spiritual warfare, and so on.
- b) The teacher could first provide examples that the class will understand such as how “technology” led to online porn gateways and, as a result, has created widespread addictions and relationship issues for people of all ages. Follow this by asking the class to extrapolate this concept to near future cybernetic inventions that will allow three-dimensional relationships and stimulation between humans and avatars.

- c) To illustrate how couples are already being fragmented and traditional families threatened, the teacher may wish to print and read and/or share portions of a New York Times article titled “Attached to Technology and Paying a Price” located here:

<http://www.nytimes.com/2010/06/07/technology/07brain.html>

- d) The teacher might discuss how issues raised in the article above will be exasperated by human-cybernetic evolution as briefly illustrated by the authors of *Forbidden Gates* on pages 205-207 including how:

1) the Borgification of man will naturally exasperate the decline of the family unit and interpersonal relationships upon which society has historically depended;

2) the increase of euphoric cybernetic addiction will multiply as cerebral stimulation of the brain’s pleasure centers is added to existing natural senses—sight, hearing, taste, smell, and touch; and

3) the threat of computer viruses or hijackers disrupting enhanced human neural or cognitive pathways will develop as cyber-enhanced individuals evolve. To illustrate the latter, Dr. Mark Gasson, from the School of Systems Engineering at the University of Reading in the United Kingdom, intentionally contaminated an implanted microchip in his hand that allows him biometric entry through security doors and that also communicates with his cell phone and other external devices. The teacher may benefit from reading an article (includes video) about Dr. Gasson’s experiment online at this link:

<http://www.bbc.co.uk/news/10158517>

4. **Despite these significant ethical and social dangers, industry and government interest in the technological dream of posthumanism, as documented in the book *Forbidden Gates*, is more than laissez-faire. The steady migration toward the fulfillment of biologically and cybernetically modified humans combined with corporate and national investments will predictably fuse this century, ultimately leading to strong cultural forces compelling all individuals to get “plugged in” to the grid. Whoever resists will be left behind as inferior Luddites (those who oppose new technology), or worse, considered enemies of the**

**collectives' progress regardless of personal or religious views. Nowhere will the struggle to resist this human biological alteration and machine integration be more immediate, say the authors, than in those religious homes where transhumanism is seen as an assault on God's creative genius, and where, as a result, people of faith seek to maintain their humanity. This conflict may emerge as much from inside these homes and families as it will from external social influences. For instance, how did you feel when reading the very down-to-earth example of the high-school girl named "Michelle" on pages 210-213?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Discuss with the class the various aspects of the "Michelle" example and whether this illustration helped to personalize the very real struggles that will soon develop as a result of human augmentation:
1. How the natural struggle between teens and their parents will be amplified.
  2. How the stress that children feel in school and society will quantify when trying to compete with enhanced humans.
  3. How media will magnify the problems by focusing on the commercial "benefits" while stereotyping conservatives as "backward."
  4. How professionals like medical doctors will be employed as spokespersons of enhancement.
  5. How government agencies such as Child Welfare Services will ultimately be involved in "protecting" a child's right to basic modifications deemed necessary for health and social interaction.
  6. How religion including Christianity will adapt to transhumanism (already happening), further challenging conservative families.
  7. How departments such as the Department of Education will broaden definitions of "special needs" children to include those unenhanced.
  8. How federal aid programs will be developed to help lower class families receive basic enhancements.
- b) The teacher may also wish to examine the samples of enhancement benefits listed by Prof. Joel Garreau (taken from real examples in his book, *Radical Evolution*) listed on pages 211-212.

5. Following the example of “Michelle,” the authors of *Forbidden Gates* return to the deeper question of how these coming challenges will actually change “spiritual warfare” (not just due to emerging and exotic “issues” related to new technology – but by literally changing what it means to be human, including cybernetic enhancement similar to the BORG (cy-borg) of *Star Trek* fame). In what ways can you imagine having your brain altered and wirelessly connected to communication systems (being developed now) as being physically and spiritually dangerous?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Read or have class members read today’s feature verses 2 Corinthians 10:4-5; Isaiah 26:3 and discuss their importance and meaning.
- b) Point out how keeping our thoughts focused on God and His will has never had more competitors than today as a result of information-driven technology, and that by integrating our brains/minds with cybernetic systems of the near future (even new games systems are under development that will allow children to control screen characters by wearing skull caps that read neural commands) the problems associated with digitally driven “attention deficit disorder” are set to multiply. Especially make notes from the section by Sue Bradley on pages 220-227 of *Forbidden Gates* that refer to those sections of the brain that may serve as gateways of supernatural perception.
- c) From these developments comes the distant groaning of a “fearful unknown” the authors say, in which the architecture of the human brain—as transformed by current and future cybernetic inventions—begins to act in ways that borderline the *supernatural*. This includes:
1. A kind of mental telepathy (page 217)
  2. Telekinesis (page 217)
  3. The brain-to-brain experiment mentioned in this chapter here:  
<http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2009/10/091006102637.htm>

- d) The teacher may find the research article by Vic Tandy mentioned on page 218 in Forbidden Gates and reproduced below to be interesting in this discussion:

### **The Ghost in the Machine**

Vic Tandy  
School of International Studies and Law  
Coventry University  
Priory Street  
Coventry  
CV1 5FB.

Tony R. Lawrence  
School of Health and Social Sciences  
Coventry University  
Priory Street  
Coventry  
CV1 5FB.

#### Abstract

In this paper we outline an as yet undocumented natural cause for some cases of ostensible haunting. Using the first author's own experience as an example, we show how a 19hz standing air wave may under certain conditions create sensory phenomena suggestive of a ghost. The mechanics and physiology of this 'ghost in the machine' effect is outlined. Spontaneous case researchers are encouraged to rule out this potential natural explanation for paranormal experience in future cases of the haunting or poltergeistic type.

#### Introduction

When investigating a haunted building it is good practice to attempt to exclude as many possible normal causes for the 'haunting' as possible. The ways in which normal earthly events might conspire to convey an impression that a house is haunted (or even beset by poltergeist behaviour, see Eastham, 1988) are numerous. Thus, all of the following may well be the more mundane cause of an ostensible haunt; water

hammer in pipes and radiators (noises), electrical faults (fires, phone calls, video problems), structural faults (draughts, cold spots, damp spots, noises), seismic activity (object movement/destruction, noises), electromagnetic anomalies (hallucinations), and exotic organic phenomena (rats scratching, beetles ticking). The exclusion of these counter-explanations, when potentially relevant, must be the first priority of the spontaneous cases investigator. To this end, we feel the 'virtual paranormal experience' reported and explained in this paper might be of interest to the spontaneous case research community.

Though many of the above counter-explanations for ghost-like phenomena may be quite easy to discount in any one case, at least some normal causes of seemingly paranormal phenomena may in fact be quite subtle, and not at all easy to discern for the untrained observer, as we hope to show in this paper.

#### The Case of the Ghost in the Machine

The first author's background is as an engineering designer and at the time of the incident he was working for a company that manufactured medical equipment. Three people worked in a laboratory made from two garages back to back and about 10ft wide by 30ft in length. One end was closed off by doors normally kept closed and the other end had a window, the other side of which was a cleaning bay. As an example of creativity with corrugated iron, this structure was home for anyone with a passion for playing with jets of water and foam.

The company's business was in the design of anaesthetic or intensive-care, life support equipment so there was always some piece of equipment wheezing away in a corner. When V.T. heard suggestions that the lab was haunted this was the first thing he thought could be behind it and paid little attention. One morning however none of the equipment was turned on and V.T. arrived just as the cleaner was leaving obviously distressed that she had seen something. As a hard nosed engineer V.T. put it down to the wild cats, wild other furry things, moving pressure hoses (as the pressure fluctuates, flexible hoses sometimes move) or some sort of lighting effect.

As time went on V.T. noticed one or two other odd events. There was a feeling of depression, occasionally a cold shiver, and on one occasion a colleague sitting at the desk turned to say something to V.T. thinking he was by his side. The colleague was surprised when V.T. was found to be at the other end of the room. There was a growing level of discomfort but the workers were all busy and paid it little attention. That is until V.T. was working on his own one night after everyone else had left. As he sat at the desk writing he began to feel increasingly uncomfortable. He was sweating but cold and the feeling of depression was noticeable. The cats were moving around and the groans and creaks from what was now a deserted factory were 'spooky', but there was also something else. It was as though something was in the room with V.T. There was no way into the lab without walking past the desk where V.T. was working. He looked around and even checked the gas bottles to be sure there was not a leak into the room. There were oxygen and carbon dioxide bottles and occasionally the staff would work with anaesthetic agents, all of which could cause all sorts of problems if handled inappropriately. All of these checked out fine so V.T. went to get a cup of coffee and returned to the desk. As he was writing he became aware that he was being watched, and a figure slowly emerged to his left. It was indistinct and on the periphery of his vision but it moved as V.T. would expect a person to. The apparition was grey and made no sound. The hair was standing up on V.T.'s neck and there was a distinct chill in the room. As V.T. recalls, 'It would not be unreasonable to suggest I was terrified'. V.T. was unable to see any detail and finally built up the courage to turn and face the thing. As he turned the apparition faded and disappeared. There was absolutely no evidence to support what he had seen so he decided he must be me cracking up and went home.

The following day V.T. was entering a fencing competition and needed to cut a thread onto the tang of a spare foil blade so that he could attach the handle. He had all the tools necessary but it was so much easier to use the engineer's bench vice in the lab to hold the blade that he went in early to cut the thread. It was only a five minute job so he put the blade in the vice and went in search of a drop of oil to help things along. As he returned, the free end of the blade was frantically vibrating up and down. Combining this with his experience from the previous night he once again felt an immediate twinge of fright. However, vibrating pieces of metal



were more familiar to him than apparitions so he decided to experiment. If the foil blade was being vibrated it was receiving energy which must have been varying in intensity at a rate equal to the resonant frequency of the blade. Energy of the type just described is usually referred to as sound. There was a lot of background noise but there could also be low frequency sound or infrasound which V.T. could not hear. As it happens sound behaves fairly predictably in long thin tubes such as organ pipes and ex-garages joined end to end so V.T. started his experiment. He placed the foil blade in a drill vice and slid it along the floor. Interestingly the vibration got bigger until the blade was level with the desk (half way down the room) after the desk it reduced in amplitude, stopping altogether at the far end of the lab.

V.T. and his colleagues were sharing their lab with a low frequency standing wave! The energy in the wave peaked in the centre of the room indicating that there was half a complete cycle. It is important to understand that what we call sound is caused by variation in the pressure of the air around us. It is represented graphically as a wave. If someone were to shout at you the sound wave will travel from them to you transmitted by the air between you both, i.e. it is a travelling wave. However the wave sharing our lab was of just the right frequency to be completely reflected back by the walls at each end, so it was not going anywhere, hence it was a standing wave. In effect the wave was folded back on itself reinforcing the peak energy in the centre of the room. Once V.T. knew this he calculated the frequency of the standing sound wave as follows;

$$f = v / \lambda$$

$$\text{where } \lambda = 2 \times l$$

$$f = \text{frequency of sound}$$

$$v = \text{velocity of sound (1,139 ft / s)}$$

$$\lambda = \text{wavelength (} l \times 2 = 60\text{ft)}$$

$$l = \text{length of room} = (30\text{ft})$$

$$\text{so we have } f = 1,139 / 60 = 18.98 \text{ Hz or Cycles per second}$$

We should not be impressed by the apparent accuracy of the frequency because V.T.'s measurements were 'quick and dirty'. For example, the speed of sound can also vary depending on temperature and pressure so,

overall, plus or minus 10% on the above figure would be a reasonable estimate.

There are now two questions. The first is where is the energy coming from? The second is what does an 19 Hz standing wave do to people? The first was answered very quickly when V.T. discussed the problem with the works' foreman who told him that they had installed a new fan in the extraction system for the cleaning room at the end of the lab. We switched off the fan and the standing wave went away. The second question required a bit more research. A book by Tempest (1976) was consulted and a couple of interesting case studies were found.

'Noise consultants were asked to examine one of a group of bays in a factory where workers reported feeling uneasy. The bay had an oppressive feel not present in the adjacent areas although the noise level appeared the same. Management workers and consultants were all aware of the unusual atmosphere and on investigation it was found that low frequency sound was present at a slightly higher level than in other bays. However the actual frequency of the offending noise was not obvious. The cause of the noise was a fan in the air conditioning system.

Workers in a university radiochemistry building experienced the same oppressive feeling together with dizziness when the fan in a fume cupboard was switched on. Conventional sound proofing had reduced the audible sound to the point where there was hardly any difference in the noise with the fan on as off. The situation effected some people so much that they refused to work in the lab. It was concluded that the low frequency component of the sound was responsible.' (p81-82.)

On page 107 the book lists symptoms caused by frequencies in the range 15-20 Hz. V.T. had no idea of the amount of energy (spl) the infrasound had because we had nothing to measure it with. These effects are quoted by Tempest at a spl range of 125-137.5 dB which would be very damaging to hearing if the frequency were in the audible range. It is a considerable amount of power but is not thought of as unreasonable by those V.T. has talked to considering that the energy was originated by a one metre diameter extractor fan driven by something like a 1 kW electric motor. In any case, the symptoms listed by Temple (1976) for low

frequency sound waves are; Severe middle ear pain (not experienced), persistent eye watering, and respiratory difficulties, sensations of fear including excessive perspiration and shivering.

Table IV on page 212 of this book shows frequencies causing disturbance to the eyes and vision to be within the band 12 to 27 Hz. A more recent book by Kroemer (1994) describes the effects of low frequency vibration as follows;

'Vibration of the body mostly affects the principal input ports, the eyes, and principal output means, hands and mouth.'(p. 287).

'Exposure to vibration often results in short-lived changes in various physiological parameters such as heart rate...At the onset of vibration exposure, increased muscle tension and initial hyperventilation have been observed.' (p. 280).

Tables 5-12 of Kroemer (1994) on p. 288, indicate that the resonant frequencies of body parts are; Head (2-20 Hz causing general discomfort), Eyeballs (1-100Hz mostly above 8 Hz and strongly 20-70Hz effect difficulty in seeing). However, different sources give different resonant frequencies for the eye itself. The resonant frequency is the natural frequency of an object, the one at which it needs the minimum input of energy to vibrate. As you can see from above, any frequency above 8 Hz will have an effect and some sources quote 40Hz. Most interestingly, a NASA technical report mentions a resonant frequency for the eye as 18 Hz (NASA Technical Report 19770013810). If this were the case then the eyeball would be vibrating which would cause a serious 'smearing' of vision. It would not seem unreasonable to see dark shadowy forms caused by something as innocent as the corner of V.T.'s spectacles. V.T. would not normally be aware of this but its size would be much greater if the image was spread over a larger part of his retina.

Another NASA report (NASA Technical Report 19870046176) mentions hyperventilation as a symptom of whole body vibration. Hyperventilation is characterised by quick shallow breathing and reduces the amount of carbon dioxide retained in the lungs. Note that Tempest (1976) also mentions respiratory difficulties caused by frequencies in our range.

Hyperventilation can have profound physiological effects. For example, Flenley (1990) describes the symptoms of hyperventilation as 'breathlessness usually at rest, often accompanied by light-headedness, muscle cramps, fear of sudden death and a feeling of difficulty in breathing in'. Fried (1987) describes a panic attack as 'a synergistic interaction between hyperventilation and anxiety.' and suggests that as the carbon dioxide is expired physiological changes cause the body to respond by feeling fear. This feeling of fear activates the sympathetic nervous system which increases the respiration rate making the hyperventilation worse. The panic attack will therefore feed itself and increase in intensity. This would seem consistent with V.T.'s experience of fear and panic when the 'ghost' appeared. V.T. knows from the experiment with the foil blade that the peak energy, known as an anti-node, was in line with the centre of the desk. As V.T. sat up and turned to look at the object he moved from this zone of peak energy to a zone of slightly lesser energy and the ghost disappeared!

#### Exorcising the standing wave ghost

Once the problem was recognised a modification was made to the mounting of the extractor fan and our ghost left with the standing wave. Low frequency sound is not easy to detect without the proper equipment. It was sheer luck that the foil blade happened to be the right length and material to react and reveal the presence of the standing wave (although 19Hz might just be heard on its own, it is in fact unlikely to exist alone so other sounds would drown it out). V.T. has since heard of a similar experience to this which happened in a corridor in a building that had a wind tunnel in the basement. The wind tunnel was on at the time of the sighting but V.T. was unable to do any measurements. Long tubes such as corridors are ideal places for standing waves especially if they are closed at both ends. The resonant frequency of one person's body parts would also be different from another so standing wave resonances may affect one individual but not another. Our advice for researchers in the future is to be very wary of ghosts reported to haunt long, windy corridors!

#### References

Eastham, P. (1988). Ticking off a poltergeist. *Journal of the Society for Psychical Research*, 55, 80-83.

Everest, F.A. (1994). *The Master Handbook of Acoustics*, 3rd Ed. TAB Books: Blue Ridge Summit, PA.

Flenley, D. C. (1990). *Respiratory Medicine* (2nd Ed), Bailliere Tindal: London.

Fried, R. (1987). *The Hyperventilation Syndrome, Research and Clinical Treatment*. Johns Hopkins University Press: London.

Kroemer, K. H. E. (1994). *Ergonomics: How to design for ease and efficiency*. Prentice Hall: London.

NASA Technical Report 19770013810

NASA Technical Report 19870046176

Smith, A.P. & Jones, D.M. (Eds.) (1992). *Handbook of Human Performance*, Vol. 1. Academic Press: London.

Tempest, W. (Ed.) (1976). *Infrasound and low frequency vibration*. Academic press: London.

- e) One of the news articles involving Olaf Blanke of the Brain Mind Institute in which a “shadow person” was created (mentioned in *Forbidden Gates*, page 218) is available online here:

<http://news.sciencemag.org/sciencenow/2006/09/20-04.html>

- 6. Following the material by Sue Bradley in chapter ten of *Forbidden Gates*, in which the ear-gates and mind-gates are discussed in relation to supernatural influences and mental as well as spiritual warfare, the authors conclude with examples of how gamers are having their dream experiences altered and learning to become the aggressor instead of the victim. This in turn is followed by discussion of science advances in mind and thought control, inception, even the question of *free will*. Where do YOU think all of this is headed?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Ending today’s class, the teacher may wish to revisit earlier studies in which the case was made concerning the important relationship between the mind and spiritual warfare, then ask the class to comment on the various “gates” as depicted by John Bunyan in his classic works: The Ear-Gate, Eye-Gate, Mouth-Gate, Nose-Gate and Feel-Gate.

b) The following additional resources mentioned in chapter ten of Forbidden Gates are available free online and may be of use to the teacher:

1. "The Pilgrim's Progress" by John Bunyan

<http://www.ccel.org/ccel/bunyan/pilgrim.toc.html>

2. THE HOLY WAR Made by Shaddai upon Diabolus for the Regaining of the Metropolis of the World, or "The Losing and Taking Again of the Town of Mansoul" by John Bunyan

[http://www.ccel.org/ccel/bunyan/holy\\_war.i.html?highlight=the,holy,war,by,john,bunyan#highlight](http://www.ccel.org/ccel/bunyan/holy_war.i.html?highlight=the,holy,war,by,john,bunyan#highlight)

## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK TEN

(Read chapter ten of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. The tenth chapter of Forbidden Gates begins by quoting a New York Times article about the nonprofit nongovernmental organization, The Lifeboat Foundation, whose mission is to encourage “scientific advancements while helping humanity survive existential risks and possible misuse of increasingly powerful technologies, including genetic engineering, nanotechnology, and robotics/AI, as we move towards the Singularity.” Were you aware of this foundation and what do you make of their ambitious plans?
2. On page 203, the authors of Forbidden Gates say “futurist think tanks such as the Lifeboat Foundation understand that the phrase, ‘those who fail to learn from history are doomed to repeat it’ is axiomatic for a reason. Human nature has a clear track record of developing defense mechanisms only after natural or manufactured threats have led to catastrophe. We humans seem doomed to learn from our mistakes far more often than from prevention.” Why do you think this is true, and what does this suggest for our future, given the unprecedented threats posed by the emerging fields of technology you have been studying?
3. The difference between the threats previous generations faced (nuclear arms for instance) and what mankind faces today is clearly understood by most secular researchers including transhumanists regarding how the emerging threats are “alive” and can self-multiply – as in living biological weapons or godlike artificial intelligence soon to arrive via technological singularity. But where most of the government reports, academic materials, and think tanks fail is in lacking to appreciate that man is not just a series of biological functions. We are spirit and soul and vulnerable to spiritual, not just environmental, issues. Thus the “shields” that the Lifeboat Foundation are working to create could only protect us so far. We will need spiritual shields too as GRIN raises those bigger issues of how human-transforming enhancements may alter man’s very soul (says Joel Garreau) as well as raise hundreds of immediate new challenges that Christians, families, and ministries are unprepared for. Write down 5 ways in which you can imagine creation-altering science (including human enhancement) affecting the spiritual nature of your home and community.
4. Despite these significant ethical and social dangers, industry and government interest in the technological dream of posthumanism, as documented in the book Forbidden Gates, is more than laissez-faire. The steady migration toward the fulfillment of biologically and cybernetically modified humans combined with corporate and national investments will predictably fuse this century, ultimately leading to strong cultural forces compelling all individuals to get “plugged in” to the grid. Whoever resists will be left behind as inferior Luddites (those who oppose new technology), or worse, considered enemies of the collectives’ progress regardless of personal or religious views. Nowhere will the struggle to resist this human biological alteration and machine integration be more immediate, say the authors, than in those religious homes where transhumanism is seen as an assault on God’s creative genius, and where, as a result, people of faith seek to maintain their humanity. This conflict may emerge as much from inside these homes and families as it will from external social influences. For instance, how did you feel when reading the very down-to-earth example of the high-school girl named “Michelle” on pages 210-213?
5. Following the example of “Michelle,” the authors of Forbidden Gates return to the deeper question of how these coming challenges will actually change “spiritual warfare” (not just due to emerging and exotic “issues” related to new technology – but by literally changing what it means to be human, including cybernetic enhancement similar to the BORG (cy-borg) of Star Trek fame). In what ways can you imagine having your brain altered and wirelessly connected to communication systems (being developed now) as being physically and spiritually dangerous?
6. Following the material by Sue Bradley in chapter ten of Forbidden Gates, in which the ear-gates and mind-gates are discussed in relation to supernatural influences and mental as well as spiritual warfare, the authors conclude with examples of how gamers are having their dream experiences altered and learning to become the aggressor instead of the victim. This in turn is followed by discussion of science advances in mind and thought control, inception, even the question of free will. Where do YOU think all of this is headed?

# LESSON #11

## WILL YOU G.R.I.N. FOR THE MARK OF THE BEAST?

Have the study group read chapter eleven of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY'S VERSES:** Revelation 13: 16-18

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #11 is to establish how emerging technology combined with transhumanist aspiration is leading toward a global identification system some imagine will become the "mark of the beast."

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter eleven of Forbidden Gates opens with several quotes from prominent individuals concerning implantable Radio Frequency Identification or RFID chips. This technology can be used to track items at a distance and many of the world's largest retailing and manufacturing companies now employ these tiny "spy chips" for remotely tracking inventory and personnel. Tech futurists envision that, as the human enhancement revolution takes off, steady migration of new and improved versions of implantable chips technology will be widely adapted inside evolving transhumans; a progressive integration of man with machine until finally, in the not too distant future, humans are cybernetically enhanced, computer adaptable, globally positioned, and constantly tracked and monitored using GPS-like navigation systems similar to what are routinely used in cars and cell phones today.

- 1. Chapter eleven of Forbidden Gates deals almost exclusively with trends in technology toward human-machine integration – the “borgification” of man – and implantable mechanisms. Do you believe the biblical “mark of the beast” could someday be a version of implantable smart-chip technology or another form of human-machine assimilation?**



**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher should lead the class in an basic opening discussion on implantable microchip technology. It may be helpful to read more from the quotes sources at the top of chapter eleven in Forbidden Gates.
1. The quote from Sen. Joseph Biden can be seen in his SJC hearings comments here:  
<http://www.gpoaccess.gov/congress/senate/judiciary/sh109-158/15-18.pdf>
  2. The article by Dr. Elaine M. Ramish for the Franklin Pierce Law Center is archived here: <http://law.unh.edu/risk/vol8/fall/ramesh.htm>
  3. Katherine Albrecht's website has additional story links that may be helpful here: <http://www.antichips.com/faq/html/faq-footnotes.html#ftn84>
- b) The online free dictionary Wikipedia has an article on RFID with additional resources here: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Radio-frequency\\_identification](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Radio-frequency_identification)

The summary at the top of the Wikipedia article states:

Radio-frequency identification (RFID) is the use of an object (typically referred to as an RFID tag) applied to or incorporated into a product, animal, or person for the purpose of identification and tracking using radio waves. Some tags can be read from several meters away and beyond the line of sight of the reader.

Radio-frequency identification involves interrogators (also known as readers), and tags (also known as labels).

Most RFID tags contain at least two parts. One is an integrated circuit for storing and processing information, modulating and demodulating a radio-frequency (RF) signal, and other specialized functions. The second is an antenna for receiving and transmitting the signal.

There are generally three types of RFID tags: passive RFID tags, which have no battery and require an external source to provoke signal transmission, active RFID tags, which contain a battery and can transmit signals once an external source ('Interrogator') has been successfully identified, and battery assisted passive (BAP) RFID tags, which require an external source to wake up but have significant higher forward link capability providing greater range.

There are a variety of groups defining standards and regulating the use of RFID, including: International Organization for Standardization (ISO), International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), ASTM International, DASH7 Alliance, EPCglobal. (Refer to Regulation and standardization below.)

RFID has many applications; for example, it is used in enterprise supply chain management to improve the efficiency of inventory tracking and management.

- c) Some of the privacy, religious, and health concerns specifically mentioned in regard to VeriChip's implantable microchip can be read here:

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/VeriChip>

- d) Numerous connections between implanted microchips and cancerous tumors have been reported. This has caused some to wonder if this is why those who receive the mark of the beast have a "grievous sore" come upon them (Rev. 16: 2). For instance:

**1. Owner says implanted chip gave cat cancer**

[http://www.upi.com/Top\\_News/US/2010/10/13/Owner-says-implanted-chip-gave-cat-cancer/UPI-43731286978632/](http://www.upi.com/Top_News/US/2010/10/13/Owner-says-implanted-chip-gave-cat-cancer/UPI-43731286978632/)

**2. Chip Implants Linked to Animal Tumors**

[http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/content/article/2007/09/08/AR2007090800997\\_pf.html](http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/content/article/2007/09/08/AR2007090800997_pf.html)

2. On pages 238-242, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* provide a stream beginning in 1973, showing consistent progress in the adoption of microchip tracking technology and the desire by governments and corporations to use this technology for human identification and tracking. Circle the top 5 points in this list, which you think would be important for class discussion.

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to ask the class to name and discuss those parts of the RFID history list on pages 238-242 of *Forbidden Gates* that they felt were important moments in RFID development.
- b) The teacher could be prepared to do the same thing. As an example, perhaps mention and discuss these two points from pages 240 and 242:
1. *The state of Wisconsin—where Thompson was governor before coming to Washington—promptly drew a line in the sand, passing a law prohibiting employers from mandating that their employees get “chipped.” Other states since have passed or are considering similar legislation.*

An article titled “Outlawing Employer Requirements that Workers Get RFID Chip Implants: Why it's the Right Thing for States to Do, Although Current Statutes May Need Refinement” provides numerous important talking points for the excerpt above:

<http://writ.news.findlaw.com/ramasastry/20071016.html>

2. *And now, at the time this book is going to the printer, the Department of Homeland Security is working out how to implement the “Real ID Act,” with the goal of codifying an international biometric ID system.*

Additional information on the Real ID Act and the timing of its implementation can be found here:

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/REAL\\_ID\\_Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/REAL_ID_Act)

- c) On pages 243-244 the authors mention the next stage in implantable technology will merge human and machine “parts” to create “living

transistors.” The following article links will be helpful if the teacher wishes to discuss this point at length:

1. <http://www.thenewatlantis.com/publications/carried-away-with-convergence>
2. <http://news.discovery.com/tech/transistor-cell-membrane-machine.html>
3. <http://www.dailymail.co.uk/sciencetech/article-1278133/Meet-nano-spiders-The-DNA-robots-day-walking-body.html>

- d) President of The Rutherford Institute and constitutional attorney John W. Whitehead questions whether “The National Biometric ID Card” will become “The Mark of the Beast?” in a 2010 article here:

[http://www.rutherford.org/articles\\_db/commentary.asp?record\\_id=649](http://www.rutherford.org/articles_db/commentary.asp?record_id=649)

3. **On pages 244-245, the authors of Forbidden Gates discuss the idea that the actual mark of the beast could be an advanced hybrid version of RFID – a vaccine or implantable biochip that has the power to rewrite human DNA by combining human and animal genetics, thus the mark of the “beast.” What did you make of this theory?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) The teacher may wish to remind the class that the technology under discussion will be employed by the coming man of sin – the Antichrist. Many believe an “event” such as the next major terrorist attack on the United States will set in motion an international call for implementation of a universal ID, which could in fact be the mark of the beast. The following excerpt from [Apollyon Rising 2012](#) may inspire a way to approach this discussion and to illustrate the progressive move toward such an international system:

Events unfolding since 9/11 portend a near future in which a man of superior intelligence, wit, charm, and diplomacy will emerge on the world scene as a savior. He will seemingly possess a transcendent wisdom that enables him to solve problems and offer solutions for many of today's most perplexing issues. His popularity will be widespread, and his fans will include young and old, religious and non-religious, male and female. Talk show hosts will interview his colleagues, news anchors will cover his movements, scholars will applaud his uncanny ability to resolve what has escaped the rest of us, and the poor will bow down at his table. He will, in all human respects, appeal to the best idea of society. But his profound comprehension and irresistible presence will be the result of an invisible network of thousands of years of collective knowledge. He will, like the god Vulcan, represent the embodiment of a very old, super-intelligent spirit. As Jesus Christ was the "seed of the woman" (Genesis 3:15), he will be the "seed of the serpent." Moreover, though his arrival in the form of a man was foretold by numerous Scriptures, the broad masses will not immediately recognize him for what he actually is—paganism's ultimate incarnation; the "beast" of Revelation 13:1.

It's been assumed for centuries that a prerequisite for the coming of Antichrist would be a "revived" world order—an umbrella under which national boundaries dissolve and ethnic groups, ideologies, religions, and economics from around the world orchestrate a single and dominant sovereignty. At the head of the utopian administration, a single personality will surface. He will appear to be a man of distinguished character, but will ultimately become "a king of fierce countenance" (Daniel 8:23). With imperious decree, he will facilitate a One-World Government, universal religion, and global socialism. Those who refuse his New World Order will inevitably be imprisoned or destroyed until at last he exalts himself "above all that is called God, or that is worshiped, so that he, as God, sitteth in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God" (2 Thessalonians 2:4).

For many years, the notion of an Orwellian society where One World Government oversees the smallest details of our lives and in which human liberties are abandoned was considered anathema. The idea that rugged individualism would somehow be sacrificed for an anesthetized universal harmony was repudiated by America's greatest minds. Then, in

the 1970s, things began to change. Following a call by Nelson Rockefeller for the creation of a “New World Order,” presidential candidate Jimmy Carter campaigned, saying, “We must replace balance of power politics with world order politics.” This struck a chord with international leaders, including President George Herbert Walker Bush, who in the 1980s began championing the one-world dirge, announcing over national television that the time for a “New World Order” had arrived. The invasion into Kuwait by Iraq/Babylon provided perfect cover for allied forces to engage the Babylonian “prince” by launching Desert Storm against Saddam Hussein’s forces, an effort Bush made clear was “to forge for ourselves and for future generations a New World Order...in which a credible United Nations can use its...role to fulfill the promise and vision of the U.N.’s founders.” Following this initial statement, Bush addressed the Congress, adding:

What is at stake is more than one small country [Kuwait], it is a big idea—a New World Order, where diverse nations are drawn together in common cause to achieve the universal aspirations of mankind.... Such is a world worthy of our struggle, and worthy of our children’s future...the long-held promise of a New World Order.

Ever since the President’s astonishing newscast, the parade of political and religious leaders in the United States and abroad pushing for a New World Order has multiplied. Britain’s Prime Minister Tony Blair, in a speech delivered in Chicago, April 22, 1999, said frankly, “We are all internationalists now, whether we like it or not.” Blair could barely have imagined how quickly his doctrine would catch on. By December 9, 2008, respected chief foreign affairs columnist for The Financial Times, Gideon Rachman (who attended the 2003 and 2004 Bilderberg meetings at Versailles, France, and Stresa, Italy), admitted, “I have never believed that there is a secret United Nations plot to take over the U.S. I have never seen black helicopters hovering in the sky above Montana. But, for the first time in my life, I think the formation of some sort of world government is plausible.” The United Kingdom’s Gordon Brown not only agreed, but in an article for The Sunday Times, March 1, 2009, said it was time “for all countries of the world” to renounce “protectionism” and to participate in a new “international” system of banking and regulations

“to shape the twenty-first century as the first century of a truly global society.” On January 1, 2009, Mikhail Gorbachev, the former head of state of the USSR, said the global clamor for change and the election of Barack Obama was the catalyst that might finally convince the world of the need for global government. In an article for the International Herald Tribune, he said:

Throughout the world, there is a clamor for change. That desire was evident in November, in an event that could become both a symbol of this need for change and a real catalyst for that change. Given the special role the United States continues to play in the world, the election of Barack Obama could have consequences that go far beyond that country.... If current ideas for reforming the world’s financial and economic institutions are consistently implemented, that would suggest we are finally beginning to understand the important of global governance.”

Four days later, on January 5, 2009, the chorus call for a New World Order was ramped up by former Secretary of State Henry Kissinger while on the floor of the New York Stock Exchange. A reporter for CNBC asked Kissinger what he thought Barack Obama’s first actions as president should be in light of the global financial crises. He answered, “I think that his task will be to develop an overall strategy for America in this period, when really a New World Order can be created.” Kissinger followed on January 13 with an opinion piece distributed by Tribune Media Services titled “The Chance for a New World Order.” Addressing the international financial crises inherited by Barack Obama, Kissinger discussed the need for an international political order (world government) to arise and govern a new international monetary and trade system. “The nadir of the existing international financial system coincides with simultaneous political crises around the globe,” he wrote. “The alternative to a new international order is chaos.” Kissinger went on to highlight Obama’s extraordinary impact on the “imagination of humanity,” calling it “an important element in shaping a New World Order.” Kissinger—a Rockefeller functionary and member of the Bilderberg group and Trilateral Commission who routinely turns up in lists among senior members of the Illuminati—peppered his article with key phrases from Masonic dogma, including the comment about the “alternative to a new

international order is chaos,” a clear reference to “ordo ab chao” from ancient Craft Masonry, a reference to the doctrine of “order out of chaos.” Like the mythical phoenix firebird, Kissinger visualized the opportunity for a New World Order to be engineered from the ashes of current global chaos, exactly the point he had made years earlier at the Bilderberger meeting in Evian, France, on May 21, 1991, when describing how the world could be manipulated into willingly embracing global government. He said:

Today Americans would be outraged if UN troops entered Los Angeles to restore order; tomorrow they will be grateful! This is especially true if they were told there was an outside threat from beyond, whether real or promulgated, that threatened our very existence. It is then that all peoples of the world will plead with world leaders to deliver them from this evil. The one thing every man fears is the unknown. When presented with this scenario, individual rights will be willingly relinquished for the guarantee of their well being granted to them by their world government.

During his second inaugural address, U.S. President George W. Bush likewise envisioned the specter of a Babylonian-like, one-world government. With an almost religious tone, he cited Masonic script, saying, “When our Founders declared a new order of the ages...they were acting on an ancient hope that is meant to be fulfilled.” New Age guru Benjamin Creme was clearer still on how the marriage of politics and religion would epitomize the New World Order when he said some years ago, “What is the plan? It includes the installation of a new world government and a new world religion under Maitreia” (Maitreia is a New Age “messiah”). Five-time United States senator from Arizona and Republican presidential nominee in 1964, Barry Goldwater, likewise foresaw the union of politics and religion as a catalyst for global government. In writing of the efforts of behind-the-scenes groups, including international bankers, to bring about a New World Order, he said it would occur through consolidating “the four centers of power—political, monetary, intellectual, and ecclesiastical.” As the managers and creators of the new (prophetic) system, this power elite would “rule the future” of mankind, he believed. So concerned was Goldwater with the consolidation of government policy and religious creed that on



September 16, 1981, he took the unique position of warning political preachers from the floor of the U.S. Senate that he would “fight them every step of the way if they [tried] to dictate their [religious ideas] to all Americans in the name of conservatism.” The increasing influence of the Religious Right on the Republican Party was bothersome to Goldwater in particular because of his libertarian views. It should have concerned theologians as well, and I say this as a man often associated with the Religious Right. Combining religious faith with politics as a legislative system of governance hearkens the formula upon which Antichrist will come to power. (Note how in the book of Revelation, chapter 13, the political figure of Antichrist derives ultra-national dominance from the world’s religious faithful through the influence of an ecclesiastical leader known as the False Prophet.) Neither Jesus nor His disciples (who turned the world upside down through preaching the gospel of Christ, the true “power of God,” according to Paul) ever imagined the goal of changing the world through supplanting secular government with an authoritarian theocracy. In fact, Jesus made it clear that His followers would not fight earthly authorities purely because His kingdom was “not of this world” (John 18:36). While every modern citizen—religious and non-religious—has responsibility to lobby for moral good, combining the mission of the church with political aspirations is not only unprecedented in New Testament theology—including the life of Christ and the pattern of the New Testament church—but, as Goldwater may have feared, a tragic scheme concocted by sinister forces to defer the church from its true power while enriching insincere bureaucrats, a disastrous fact that only now some are beginning to understand.

Behind these scenes and beyond view of the world’s uninitiated members, the alchemy and rituals of the occult masters—Illuminists, Masons, Bonesmen, Bilderbergers, and Bohemians—have combined to harmonize so completely within recent U.S. foreign and domestic policies as to clearly point to a terrifying Sibyl’s conjure, a near-future horizon upon which a leader of indescribable brutality will appear. Although this false prince of peace will seem at first to hold unique answers to life’s most challenging questions, ultimately he will make the combined depravities of Antiochus Epiphanes, Hitler, Stalin, and Genghis Khan, all of whom were types of the Antichrist, look like child’s play. He will raise his fist, “speaking great things...in blasphemy against God, to

blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven” (Revelation 13:5–6). He will champion worship of the “old gods” and “cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed” (Revelation 13:15), and he will revive an ancient mystery religion that is “the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird” (Revelation 18:2). Nevertheless, the world is readied—indeed, hungry for—a political savior to arise now with a plan to deliver mankind from upheaval.

b) The following additional information may provide talking points the teacher may choose to use:

- ANTICHRIST means “against Christ,” or an opposition Christ, a rival Christ. The word is used by the apostle John. Referring to false teachers, he says (1 John 2:18, 22; 4:3; 2 John 1:7), “Even now are there many antichrists.”
- This name has been applied to the “little horn” of the “king of fierce countenance” (Dan. 7:24, 25; 8:23-25). It has been applied also to the “false Christs” spoken of by our Lord (Matt. 24:5, 23, 24). (3.) To the “man of sin” described by Paul (2 Thess. 2:3, 4, 8-10). (4.) And to the “beast from the sea” (Rev. 13:1; 17:1-18).
- The characteristics of the antichrist include: •Denies the Father and the Son (1 John 2:22) •Denies the incarnation of Christ (1 John 4:3; 2 John 1:7) •Spirit of, prevalent in apostolic times (1 John 2:18) •Deceit, a characteristic of (2 John 1:7)
- The identity of the Antichrist has always been the object of speculation in the church age. Each decade seems to produce someone that is surely the Antichrist. It started in the days immediately after Pentecost. In 40 A.D. Gaius Caesar, known as Caligula, ( 37-41 A.D.) ordered the Jews to erect his statue in the Temple at Jerusalem. He sent two legions to Palestine to enforce the order. At this critical moment Jewish Christians concluded that the prophecy in Matt.24:15-16 was about to be fulfilled. However. Caligula died suddenly, and the officer in charge failed to carry out the order and the crisis passed. When Nero (reigned 54-68 A.D.) went on a rampage against the Christians in 64 A.D., shortly after the burning of Rome, believers speculated that the Emperor was the Antichrist. This rumor did not terminate even at the death of Nero, as

the theory was that Nero would rise from the dead, then fulfill the position of the Antichrist. Lactantius (240-320 A.D.), Jerome (340-420 A.D.) and Augustine (354-430 A.D.) all believed that the Antichrist would turn out to be a resuscitated Nero.

- Iranaeus (130-202 A.D.) and Hippolytus (170-236 A.D.) believed that the Antichrist would be a descendent from the tribe of Dan. They based their belief on passages like Jer.8:16//Rev.7:5-8/Deut.33:22//Gen.49:16-17.
- Some of the church fathers thought that Simon Magus (Acts 8:24-) was the Antichrist.
- When emperor Julian (332-363 A.D.) came to the throne in A.D.36, he became an apostate from the Christian faith. In his youth he had confessed the Christian faith. But the wicked lives of the professing Christians in the court convinced him that Christianity was an adverse factor in the empire. Therefore, he abandoned Christianity and tried to reinstate paganism. Churchmen began to label him as the Antichrist.
- The Protestant Reformers, almost to a man, identified the Antichrist with the Pope. Martin Luther (1483-1546 A.D.) believed that the antichrist was the papal system, the whole succession of popes.
- At the time of the French Revolution, under the inspiration of men like Diderat and Voltaire, the French radicals began a program of exterminating the Christian religion in France. They outlawed Romanism as well as the Reform faith. They turned the Notre Dame Cathedral into a temple devoted to the worship of reason. This led many to believe that the antichrist had at last manifested himself.
- Later European conquests of Napoleon Bonapart III (1769-1821 A.D.) convinced Christians that he was the military super-man that the scripture predicts will dominate western Europe.
- The activities of Kaiser Wilhem (1859-1918 A.D.) prompted many believers to believe him to be the antichrist and when he suffered a stroke that paralyzed his right side, Christians thought this was the incontrovertible evidence, pointing to Zech.11:17 as the evidence.
- Adolph Hitler (1889-1945 A.D.) during World War II caused many Bible teachers to conclude that he was the antichrist.
- The rise of Benito Mussolini (1899-1955 A.D.) who operated within the boundaries of the old Roman Empire and resided in Rome caused some Bible teachers to see him as the long awaited antichrist. When

he was hung these same bible teachers defended their position by insisting that Mussolini would raise from the dead and become the antichrist.

- Others made Joseph Stalin a candidate for antichrist.

- 4. On pages 245-251, material from Sharon Gilbert (whose formal education includes molecular biology) makes numerous disturbing points concerning how genetic sciences could actually create an implantable bio-chip that would have the power to rewrite human DNA in fulfillment of Nita Horn's "mark of the beast" theory. Highlight parts from Sharon's comments and write out thoughts on areas you believe would be important for class discussion.**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Below are some of the points from Sharon Gilbert's insights that the teacher also may wish to highlight and discuss with the class:

1. (page 246) *"For decades, laboratories have created chimeric combinations of animal, plant, and even human dna under the guise of medical research."*

The teacher may wish to discuss this point using such news articles:

<http://www.reuters.com/article/idUSTRE5A900R20091110>

2. (page 247) *"A seemingly innocuous vaccine or identification 'chip' can initiate intracellular changes, not only in somatic or "body" cells but also in germ-line cells such as ova and sperm. The former alters the recipient only; the latter alters the recipient's doomed descendants as well."*

The teacher should remind the class how, in Lesson #8, germline engineering was summarized as having "the potential to actually achieve the goals of the early eugenics movement (which sought to create superior humans via improving genetics through selective breeding) through genetically modifying human genes in very early embryos, sperm, and eggs. As a result, germ-line engineering is considered by some conservative bioethicists to be the most dangerous of human-

enhancement technology, as it has the power to truly reassemble the very nature of humanity into posthuman, altering an embryo's every cell and leading to inheritable modifications extending to all succeeding generations" (pgs 165-166, Forbidden Gates).

3. (page 247) *"Picture an injectible chip comprised of dna-dx, containing instructions for a super-soldier."*

The teacher may wish to discuss how DARPA and other agencies of the US Military have invested billions of dollars over the past few decades on "super soldier" technology that includes rewriting human DNA. Some of the stories that could be printed and shown to the class include:

<http://www.counterpunch.org/correia09152010.html>

<http://www.counterpunch.org/floyd01132003.html>

<http://www.wired.com/dangerroom/2008/06/jason-warns-of>

<http://www.wired.com/dangerroom/2010/07/holy-acronym-darpa-batman-robin-to-master-biology-outdo-evolution/>

<http://www.wired.com/dangerroom/2010/02/darpas-new-plans-crowdsource-intel-immunize-nets-edit-dna>

<http://www.geneticsandsociety.org/article.php?id=4593>

4. (page 249) *"The resulting hybrid cell is no **longer purely human**. If a hybridized **skin cell**, it may now glow, or perhaps form scales rather than hair, **claws rather than fingernails**. If a **brain cell**, the new genetic instructions could produce an altered neurotransmitter that reduces or even **eliminates the body's need for sleep**. **Muscle cells** may **grow larger** and more efficient at using low levels of calcium and oxygen. **Retina cells** may encode for receptors that enable the "posthuman being" **to perceive infrared or ultraviolet light frequencies** [recall from Lesson #7 the discussion about Prof. Bostrom's transhumanist dream of merging men with animals to expand our modes of perception]. The **hybrid ears** may*

now sense a **wider range of sounds, taste buds a greater range of chemicals.** **Altered brains** might even attune to **metaphysics and “unseen” gateways, allowing communication with supernatural realms.”**

The paragraph above is loaded with enough talking points for a class all its own. We have highlighted in bold areas the teacher may wish to discuss.

5. (pages 249-250) *“Germ-line alterations, mentioned earlier, form a terrifying picture of generational development and **may very well already be a reality.** Genetic ‘enhancement’ of sperm-producing cells would change human sperm into tiny infiltrators, and any fertilized ovum a living chimera. Science routinely conducts experiments with transgenic mice, rats, chickens, pigs, cows, horses, and many other species. **It is naïve to believe humans have been left out of this transgenic equation.”***

Here, Sharon makes a couple of her suspicions known, that humans with altered germline conditions may already walk among us, and secondly that it is naïve to believe mature transgenic humans have gone unconstructed.

5. **On pages 251-257, the authors of Forbidden Gates raise the issue of transhumanism as a replacement theology, a new form of religion. Many transhumanists would decry this depiction, but what do you believe based on what you know of this rapidly growing cultural movement?**

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may benefit from listening to the lectures delivered at the Faith, Transhumanism, and Hope symposium at Trinity College in Toronto, Canada, made by transhumanist Peter Addy, who lectured on the fantastic “Mutant Religious Impulses of the Future,” Prof. Mark Walker who spoke on “Becoming Godlike,” James Hughes who offered “Buddhism and Transhumanism: The Technologies of Self-Perfection,” Michael LaTorra who

gave a “Trans-Spirit” speech, nanotechnologist and lay Catholic Tihamer Toth-Fejel who presented “Is Catholic Transhumanism Possible?” and Nick Bostrom who spoke on “Transhumanism and Religion.” Each of these presentations can be listened to or downloaded at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com).

- b) At the writing of this teachers guide, the “Transhumanism and Spirituality Conference” was being hosted (October 2010) in Utah. Video archives should be available by the time the teacher receives this teaching guide. The website where these presentations are supposed to be available is here: <http://www.transhumanism-spirituality.org/>
- c) A New York Times article published June 11, 2010, titled “Merely Human? That’s So Yesterday,” speaks of transhumanism and the Singularity as offering “a modern-day, quasi-religious answer to the Fountain of Youth by affirming the notion that, yes indeed, humans—or at least something derived from them—can have it all” here: <http://www.nytimes.com/2010/06/13/business/13sing.html? r=1>
- d) Even the largest online transhumanist think tank (IEET) in their peer reviewed electronic Journal of Evolution and Technology article “Apologia for Transhumanist Religion” introduces the notion of transhumanism as religion at the link below (and note one of the founders of the JET is James Hughes, a speaker at both of the transhumanism and religion conferences cited above and with whom Forbidden Gates co-author Tom Horn has had radio debates): <http://ietpress.org/volume15/jordan2.html>

**6. The authors conclude the eleventh chapter of Forbidden Gates making the bold statement that a growing number of people believe mankind will either adapt and be assimilated to posthuman, or be replaced by Nephilim 2.0 and the revival of their ancient mystery religion. Do you agree? And does this argue the need for Christian participation in public dialogue over this issue while there is time?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) The teacher could conclude this class noting how:

1. On page 255 of *Forbidden Gates*, the point is made that much of transhumanism's religious concepts are derived from ancient Gnosticism and the idea that "God" was imperfect and thus his creation can be improved upon. This argument echoes the activity of the Watchers and their attempt at reconfiguring creation. Wikipedia has a summary on Gnosticism that might be helpful here:  
<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnosticism>
2. Conversely, Christians believe we were created in God's image to be temples of His Holy Spirit.
3. In our fallen condition, struggle makes us spiritually stronger and helps define character.
4. The thoughtful commentary by Dr. C. Christopher Hook at the conclusion of the chapter raises four interesting points:
  - a. Is it appropriate for members of the body of Christ to engage in alterations that go beyond therapy and are irreversible?
  - b. Is it just to do so in a world already deeply marked by inequities?
  - c. What does it mean that our Lord healed and restored in His ministry—never enhanced?
  - d. Is it significant that the gifts of the Holy Spirit—wisdom, love, patience, kindness—cannot be manufactured by technology?



## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK ELEVEN

(Read chapter eleven of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. Chapter eleven of Forbidden Gates deals almost exclusively with trends in technology toward human-machine integration – the “borgification” of man – and implantable mechanisms. Do you believe the biblical “mark of the beast” could someday be a version of implantable smart-chip technology or another form of human-machine assimilation?
2. On pages 238-242, the authors of Forbidden Gates provide a stream beginning in 1973, showing consistent progress in the adoption of microchip tracking technology and the desire by governments and corporations to use this technology for human identification and tracking. Circle the top 5 points in this list, which you think would be important for class discussion.
3. On pages 244-245, the authors of Forbidden Gates discuss the idea that the actual mark of the beast could be an advanced hybrid version of RFID – a vaccine or implantable biochip that has the power to rewrite human DNA by combining human and animal genetics, thus the mark of the “beast.” What did you make of this theory?
4. On pages 245-251, material from Sharon Gilbert (whose formal education includes molecular biology) makes numerous disturbing points concerning how genetic sciences could actually create an implantable bio-chip that would have the power to rewrite human DNA in fulfillment of Nita Horn’s “mark of the beast” theory. Highlight parts from Sharon’s comments and write out thoughts on areas you believe would be important for class discussion.
5. On pages 251-257, the authors of Forbidden Gates raise the issue of transhumanism as a replacement theology, a new form of religion. Many transhumanists would decry this depiction, but what do you believe based on what you know of this rapidly growing cultural movement?
6. The authors conclude the eleventh chapter of Forbidden Gates making the bold statement that a growing number of people believe mankind will either adapt and be assimilated to posthuman, or be replaced by Nephilim 2.0 and the revival of their ancient mystery religion. Do you agree? And does this argue the need for Christian participation in public dialogue over this issue while there is time?

# LESSON #12

## THOSE “OTHER” SIGNS OF THE DAYS OF NOAH

Have the study group read chapter twelve of FORBIDDEN GATES before the class and write out their answers to the questions on the tear-out sheet you will provide (located at the end of this lesson. Please photocopy and give that sheet to each student one-week before the lesson). The student should bring their filled-out sheets to class to use in class discussion.

**TODAY’S VERSES:** 1 Samuel 17: 20-27; Numbers 13:26-30

**TODAY’S FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #12 is to establish how the members of the mystical body of Christ (the true Church) remain the only power on earth against which the spirit of the Nephilim (including that part of modern transhumanism that seeks to cross species barriers) cannot stand. If the reappearance of Nephilim on earth – either physically or spiritually – is happening in fulfillment of Matthew 24:37 “as it was in the days of Noah,” this is only part of the story. The days of Noah had other “signs” too, ones that point to the overcoming power of God as an operative principle through His covenant people.

### **OPENING THOUGHT:**

Chapter twelve of Forbidden Gates will be used to focus on the “other” signs of the days of Noah, which lay out an image of God’s covenant people as the single agent on earth capable of overcoming the ancient and evil supernaturalism operating within the ancient/modern transhuman dream of synthetically altering and genetically reengineering creation (as was first attempted before the Great Flood by powerful fallen angels known as *Watchers*).

- 1. On page 260 of Forbidden Gates, the authors write “But if indeed Satan has initiated an extraordinary conspiracy to revive species-altering supernaturalism as existed in Noah’s day, and assuming there is a gap between that sign and when God removes His own from this planet, the church as the body of Christ and God’s representation on earth could play a unique role as the instrument through which the Almighty, on behalf of His creation, engages this evil.” If we**

can “assume” there is a gap of time between the start of the human-enhancement revolution and the removal of the Church from this planet, how much time do YOU believe the Church has to engage the transhumanist debate?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) Only the teacher knows the particular point of view held by their fellowship regarding a “rapture” or “no rapture” pre, mid, or post-tribulation views, which this study does not engage. The teacher may wish to raise their particular point of view on such issue here, or generally discuss how much “time” the class and/or teacher believes remains to effectively engage this issue.
  
- b) The teacher will find the recent press release by Tom Horn (that went across the wire and was picked up by numerous news services including Wired Magazine) AN OPEN LETTER TO CHRISTIAN LEADERS ON BIOTECHNOLOGY AND THE FUTURE OF MAN to contain talking points and the author’s general sense of urgency surrounding the need for the church to immediately become involved in the human-enhancement and transhumanism debate as outlined in this study. The open letter contains some information extracted from the book Forbidden Gates and which may have been discussed in previous lessons. It can be found reproduced below and online here: <http://www.raidersnewsnetwork.com/leadstory94.htm>

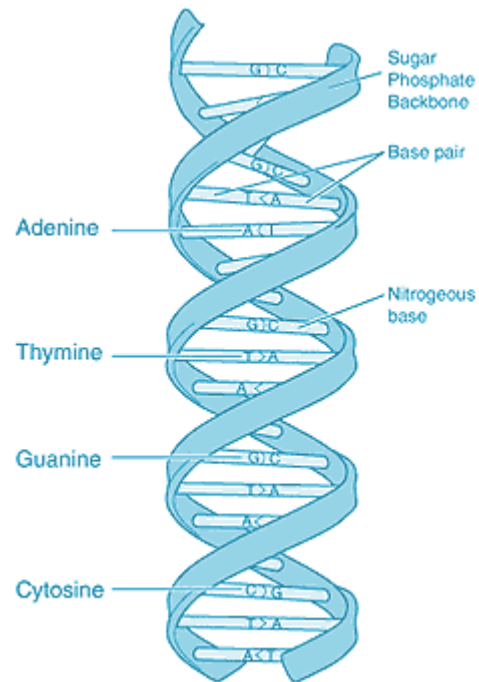
RaidersNewsNetwork Exclusive

-----

[download as printable pdf](#)

**THE ISSUE**

*In recent years, astonishing technological developments have pushed the frontiers of humanity toward far-reaching morphological transformation that promises in the very near future to redefine what it means to be human. An international, intellectual, and fast-growing cultural movement known as transhumanism, whose vision is supported by a growing list of U.S. military advisors, bioethicists, law professors, and academics, intends the use of biotechnology, genetic engineering, nanotechnology, cybernetics, and artificial*



*intelligence as tools that will radically redesign our minds, our memories, our physiology, our offspring, and even perhaps— as Joel Garreau, in his bestselling book *Radical Evolution*, claims—our very souls. The technological, cultural, and metaphysical shift now underway unapologetically forecasts a future dominated by this new species of unrecognizably superior humans, and applications under study now to make this dream a reality are being funded by thousands of government and private research facilities around the world. The issues raised by human-transforming science must be addressed by Christian leaders in a serious national conversation. To fail in this responsibility may lead to the question "what does it mean to be human" being abdicated to a frightening transhuman vision.*

---

## **AN OPEN LETTER TO CHRISTIAN LEADERS ON BIOTECHNOLOGY AND THE FUTURE OF MAN**

Time running out to influence debate on transhumanism

by Thomas R. Horn  
RaidersNewsNetwork.com

Dear Pastor and Christian Leader,

Brent Waters, Director of the Jerre L. and Mary Joy Stead Center for Ethics and Values has written, "If Christians are to help shape contemporary culture—particularly in a setting in which I fear the posthuman message will prove attractive, if not seductive—then they must offer an alternative and compelling vision; a counter theological discourse so to speak."

Although the Vatican in 2008 issued a limited set of instructions on bioethics primarily dealing with in vitro fertilization and stem cell research (Dignitas Personae or "the Dignity of the Person" [[pdf](#)]) and a handful of Christian scientists, policy makers, and conservative academics have hinted in public commentary on the need for a broader, manifesto-like document on the subject, the church as an institution has failed at any concerted effort to focus on the genetics revolution, the government's interest in human enhancement, the viral transhumanist philosophy capturing the mind of a generation at colleges and universities (not to mention via popular media), and the significant moral and ethical issues raised by these trends. At the time this open letter is being posted, four thousand evangelical leaders from two hundred nations are planning to convene in South Africa to adopt a new manifesto related to missiology and "a statement on Nature." This gathering is organized by Billy Graham's Lausanne Committee for World Evangelism (LCWE) and we pray it will include something significant on bioethics, because other than a nearly decade-old Lausanne "Occasional Paper No. 58," which discussed ways in which bioethics could be used as a tool for evangelism (very important), no documentation we have seen thus far indicates that the new LCWE gathering will substantially debate the moral limits of human-enhancement technologies, which have quietly and dramatically evolved since the brief "Occasional Paper No. 58."

While the Vatican's Dignitas Personae likewise failed to provide instructions on the greater issue of biological enhancement (as envisioned by transhumanists and espoused by agencies of the U.S. and other federal governments as the next step in human evolution), its positional paper did provide an important bird's-eye view on the clash developing between traditional morality and the contradictory adoption

of transhumanist philosophy by Christian apologists, who likewise have begun to question what it means to be human and whose competing moral vision could ultimately shape the future of society.

Immediately following the release of *Dignitas Personae*, Catholic scientist William B. Neaves, in an essay for the *National Catholic Reporter*, reflected the new biblical exegesis, causing reporter Rod Dreher to describe it as clearly illustrating “the type of Christianity that is eager to jettison the old morality and embrace the new.” The subtleties behind Neaves’ comments included:

An alternative point of view to the Vatican’s, embraced by many Christians, is that personhood [a transhumanist concept] occurs after successful implantation in the mother’s uterus, when individual ontological identity is finally established.... If one accepts the viewpoint that personhood begins after implantation, the moral framework guiding the development and application of medical technology to human reproduction and treatment of disease looks very different from that described in *Dignitas Personae*.

In the alternative moral framework, taking a pill to prevent the products of fertilization from implanting in a uterus is morally acceptable. Using ivf [in vitro fertilization] to complete the family circle of couples otherwise unable to have children is an unmitigated good. Encouraging infertile couples with defective gametes to adopt already-produced ivf embryos that will otherwise be discarded is a laudable objective. And using embryonic stem cells to seek cures [creating human embryos for research “parts”] becomes a worthy means of fulfilling the biblical mandate to heal the sick.

Notwithstanding that the discussion by Neaves was limited to the Vatican’s position on embryos, his introduction of memes involving personhood and “ensoulment” represents worrisome Christian theological entanglement with transhumanist philosophy, further illustrating the need for a solid manifesto providing a conservative vision

for public policy with regard to human experimentation and enhancement.

In the letter to the church at Ephesus, Paul states the responsibility of the Church as the agent of God's wisdom, concluding this was by divine intention. "His intent was that now, through the church, the manifold wisdom of God should be made known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly realms" (Ephesians 3:10). Making known the "righteous" and manifold wisdom of God must include human-affirming virtues of Christian morality that are intrinsic to His divine order and the Great Commission. In every generation, there is no middle ground for preachers of righteousness in these matters. Christian leaders must be actively engaged in ideological warfare for the mind of a generation especially in an age where people are seeking reasons to believe, despite everything they are being told, that the church remains relevant. To fail this responsibility could be to abdicate to a frightening transhuman vision of the future such as was predicted by theologian and Christian apologist C. S. Lewis in *The Abolition of Man*. Lewis foresaw the day when transhumanist and scientific reasoning would win out, permanently undoing mankind through altering the species, ultimately reducing *Homo sapiens* to utilitarian products. Here is part of what he said:

In order to understand fully what Man's power over Nature, and therefore the power of some men over other men, really means, we must picture the race extended in time from the date of its emergence to that of its extinction. Each generation exercises power over its successors: and each, in so far as it modifies the environment bequeathed to it and rebels against tradition, resists and limits the power of its predecessors. This modifies the picture which is sometimes painted of a progressive emancipation from tradition and a progressive control of natural processes resulting in a continual increase of human power. In reality, of course, if any one age really attains, by eugenics and scientific education, the power to make its descendants what it pleases [transhuman/posthuman], all men who live after it are the patients of that power. They are weaker, not stronger: for though we may have put wonderful machines in their hands we have pre-ordained how they are to use them. And if, as is almost certain,

the age which had thus attained maximum power over posterity were also the age most emancipated from tradition, it would be engaged in reducing the power of its predecessors almost as drastically as that of its successors.... The last men, far from being the heirs of power, will be of all men most subject to the dead hand of the great planners and conditioners and will themselves exercise least power upon the future.... The final stage [will have] come when Man by eugenics, by pre-natal conditioning, and by an education and propaganda based on a perfect applied psychology...shall have "taken the thread of life out of the hand of Clotho" [one of the Three Fates in mythology responsible for spinning the thread of human life] and be henceforth free to make our species whatever we wish it to be. The battle will indeed be won. But who, precisely, will have won it?

Lewis foresaw the progressive abandonment of what we would call "moral law" based on Judeo-Christian values giving way to "the dead hand of the great planners and conditioners" who would decide what men should biologically become. The terms "great planners and conditioners" correspond perfectly with modern advocates of transhumanism who esteem their blueprint for the future of the species as the one that will ultimately decide the fate of man. A recent step toward establishing this goal occurred when the U.S. National Science Foundation (NSF) and the Human Enhancement Ethics Group (based at California Polytechnic State University, whose advisory board is a wish list of transhumanist academics and institutions worldwide) released its fifty-page report entitled "Ethics of Human Enhancement: 25 Questions & Answers." This government-funded report addressed the definitions, scenarios, anticipated societal disruptions, and policy and law issues that need to be considered en route to becoming posthuman (the full NSF report can be downloaded for free at our Web site: [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com)). Some of the topics covered in the new study include:

- What are the policy implications of human enhancement?
- Is the natural-artificial distinction of human enhancement morally significant?



- Does human enhancement raise issues of fairness, access, and equity?
- Will it matter if there is an “enhanced divide” between “new” people classifications?
- How would such a divide make communication difficult between “normals” and the “enhanced”?
- How should the enhancement of children be approached?
- What kind of societal disruptions might arise from human enhancement?
- Should there be any limits on enhancement for military purposes?
- Might enhanced humans count as someone’s intellectual property?
- Will we need to rethink the very meaning of “ethics,” given the dawn of enhancement?

The “Ethics of Human Enhancement” report was authored by the NSF-funded research team of Dr. Fritz Allhoff (Western Michigan University), Dr. Patrick Lin (California Polytechnic State University), Prof. James Moor (Dartmouth College), and Prof. John Weckert (Center for Applied Philosophy and Public Ethics/Charles Sturt University, Australia) as part of a three-year ethics study on human enhancement and emerging technologies. This came on the heels of the US National Institute of Health granting Case Law School in Cleveland \$773,000 of taxpayers’ money to begin developing the actual guidelines that will be used for setting government policy on the next step in human evolution—“genetic enhancement.” Maxwell Mehlman, Arthur E. Petersilge Professor of Law, director of the Law-Medicine Center at the Case Western Reserve University School of Law, and professor of bioethics in the Case School of Medicine, led the team of law professors, physicians, and bioethicists over the two-year project “to develop standards for tests on human

subjects in research that involves the use of genetic technologies to enhance ‘normal’ individuals.” Following the initial study, Mehlman began offering two university lectures: “Directed Evolution: Public Policy and Human Enhancement” and “Transhumanism and the Future of Democracy,” addressing the need for society to comprehend how emerging fields of science will, in approaching years, alter what it means to be human, and what this means to democracy, individual rights, free will, eugenics, and equality. Other law schools, including Stanford and Oxford, are now hosting similar annual “Human Enhancement and Technology” conferences, where transhumanists, futurists, bioethicists, and legal scholars are busying themselves with the ethical, legal, and inevitable ramifications of posthumanity.

“No matter where one is aligned on this issue, it is clear that the human enhancement debate is a deeply passionate and personal one, striking at the heart of what it means to be human,” explained Dr. Lin in the NSF report. Then, with surprising candor, he added, “Some see it as a way to fulfill or even transcend our potential; others see it as a darker path towards becoming Frankenstein’s monster.”

Because any attempt at covering each potential GRIN-tech, catastrophic, Frankenstein's monster possibility in an open letter such as this would be impractical, I summarize below a few of the most important areas in which conservatives, bioethicists, regulators, and especially Christians could become informed and involved in the public dialogue over the potential benefits and threats represented by these emerging fields of science:

#### SYNTHETIC BIOLOGY

Synthetic biology is one of the newest areas of biological research that seeks to design new forms of life and biological functions not found in nature. The concept began emerging in 1974, when Polish geneticist Waclaw Szybalski speculated about how scientists and engineers would soon enter “the synthetic biology phase of research in our field. We will then devise new control elements and add these new modules to the existing genomes or build up wholly new genomes. This would be a field with the unlimited expansion [of] building new...‘synthetic’ organisms,

like a ‘new better mouse.’” Following Szybalski’s speculation, the field of synthetic biology reached its first major milestone in 2010 with the announcement that researchers at the J. Craig Venter Institute (JCVI) had created an entirely new form of life nicknamed “Synthia” by inserting artificial genetic material, which had been chemically synthesized, into cells that were then able to grow. The JCVI Web site explains:

Genomic science has greatly enhanced our understanding of the biological world. It is enabling researchers to “read” the genetic code of organisms from all branches of life by sequencing the four letters that make up DNA. Sequencing genomes has now become routine, giving rise to thousands of genomes in the public databases. In essence, scientists are digitizing biology by converting the A, C, T, and G’s of the chemical makeup of DNA into 1’s and 0’s in a computer. But can one reverse the process and start with 1’s and 0’s in a computer to define the characteristics of a living cell? We set out to answer this question [and] now, this scientific team headed by Drs. Craig Venter, Hamilton Smith, and Clyde Hutchison have achieved the final step in their quest to create the first...synthetic genome [which] has been “booted up” in a cell to create the first cell controlled completely by a synthetic genome.

The JCVI site goes on to explain how the ability to routinely write the software of life will usher in a new era in science, and with it, unnatural “living” products like Szybalski’s “new better mouse.” Jerome C. Glenn added for the [2010 State of the Future](#) 14th annual report from the Millennium Project, “Synthetic biologists forecast that as computer code is written to create software to augment human capabilities, so too genetic code will be written to create life forms to augment civilization.” The new better mice, dogs, horses, cows, or humans that grow from this science will be unlike any of the versions God made. In fact, researchers at the University of Copenhagen may look at what Venter has accomplished as amateur hour compared to their posthuman plans. They’re working on a third Peptide Nucleic Acid (PNA) strand—a synthetic hybrid of protein and DNA—to upgrade humanity’s two existing DNA strands from double helix to triple. In so doing, these scientists “dream of synthesizing life that is utterly alien to this world—both to better

understand the minimum components required for life (as part of the quest to uncover the essence of life and how life originated on earth) and, frankly, to see if they can do it. That is, they hope to put together a novel combination of molecules that can self-organize, metabolize (make use of an energy source), grow, reproduce and evolve.”

#### PATENTING NEW LIFE-FORMS

Questions are evolving now over “patenting” of transgenic seeds, animals, plants, and synthetic life-forms by large corporations, which at a minimum has already begun to impact the economy of rural workers and farmers through such products as Monsanto’s “terminator” seeds. Patenting of human genes will escalate these issues, as best-selling author Michael Crichton pointed out a while back in a piece for the New York Times titled, “Gene Patents Aren’t Benign and Never Will Be,” in which he claimed that people could die in the future from not being able to afford medical treatment as a result of medicines owned by patent holders of specific genes related to the genetic makeup of those persons. Former special counsel for President Richard Nixon, Charles Colson, added, “The patenting of genes and other human tissue has already begun to turn human nature into property. The misuse of genetic information will enable insurers and employers to exercise the ultimate form of discrimination. Meanwhile, advances in nanotechnology and cybernetics threaten to ‘enhance’ and one day perhaps rival or replace human nature itself—in what some thinkers are already calling ‘transhumanism.’”

#### HUMAN CLONING

The prospect of human cloning was raised in the nineties immediately after the creation of the much-celebrated “Dolly,” a female domestic sheep clone. Dolly was the first mammal to be cloned using “somatic cell nuclear transfer,” which involves removing the DNA from an unfertilized egg and replacing the nucleus of it with the DNA that is to be cloned. Today, a version of this science is common practice in genetics engineering labs worldwide, where “therapeutic cloning” of human and human-animal embryos is employed for stem-cell harvesting (the stem cells, in turn, are used to generate virtually any type of specialized cell in

the human body). This type of cloning was in the news recently when it emerged from William J. Clinton Presidential Center documents that the newest member of the Supreme Court, Elena Kagan, had opposed during the Clinton White House any effort by Congress to prevent humans from being cloned specifically for experimental purposes, then killed. A second form of human cloning is called “reproductive cloning” and is the technology that could be used to create a person who is genetically identical with a current or previously existing human. While Dolly was created by this type of cloning technology, the American Medical Association and the American Association for the Advancement of Science have raised caution on using this approach to create human clones, at least at this stage. Government bodies including the U.S. Congress have considered legislation to ban mature human cloning, and though a few states have implemented restrictions, contrary to public perception and except where institutions receive federal funding, no federal laws exist at this time in the United States to prohibit the cloning of humans. The United Nations, the European Union, and Australia likewise considered and failed to approve a comprehensive ban on human cloning technology, leaving the door open to perfect the science should society, government, or the military come to believe that duplicate or replacement humans hold intrinsic value.

## REDEFINING HUMANS AND HUMAN RIGHTS

Where biotechnology is ultimately headed includes not only redefining what it means to be human, but redefining subsequent human rights as well. For instance, Dr. James Hughes, whom I have debated on his syndicated Changesurfer Radio show, wants transgenic chimps and great apes uplifted genetically so that they achieve “personhood.” The underlying goal behind this theory would be to establish that basic cognitive aptitude should equal “personhood” and that this “cognitive standard” and not “human-ness” should be the key to constitutional protections and privileges. Among other things, this would lead to nonhuman “persons” and “nonperson” humans, unhinging the existing argument behind intrinsic sanctity of human life and paving the way for such things as harvesting organs from people like Terry Schiavo whenever the loss of cognitive ability equals the dispossession of “personhood.” These would be the first victims of transhumanism, according to Prof.

Francis Fukuyama, concerning who does or does not qualify as fully human and is thus represented by the founding concept that “all men are created equal.” Most would argue that any human fits this bill, but women and blacks were not included in these rights in 1776 when Thomas Jefferson wrote the Declaration of Independence. So who is to say what protections can be automatically assumed in an age when human biology is altered and when personhood theory challenges what bioethicists like Wesley J. Smith champion as “human exceptionalism”: the idea that human beings carry special moral status in nature and special rights, such as the right to life, plus unique responsibilities, such as stewardship of the environment. Some, but not all, believers in human exceptionalism arrive at this concept from a biblical worldview based on Genesis 1:26, which says, “And God said, ‘Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.’”

#### NANOTECHNOLOGY AND CYBERNETICS

As discussed in the upcoming new book *Forbidden Gates*, technology to merge human brains with machines is progressing at a fantastic rate. Nanotechnology—the science of engineering materials or devices on an atomic and molecular scale between 1 to 100 nanometers (a nanometer is one billionth of a meter) in size—is poised to take the development between brain-machine interfaces and cybernetic devices to a whole new adaptive level for human modification. This will happen because, as Dr. C. Christopher Hook points out:

Engineering or manipulating matter and life at nanometer scale [foresees] that the structures of our bodies and our current tools could be significantly altered. In recent years, many governments around the world, including the United States with its National Nanotechnology Initiative, and scores of academic centers and corporations have committed increasing support for developing nanotechnology programs. The military, which has a significant interest in nanotechnology, has created the Center for Soldier Nanotechnologies (csn) [which is] interested in the use of such technology to help create the seamless interface of electronic

devices with the human nervous system, engineering the cyborg soldier.

## TRANSHUMAN EUGENICS

In the early part of the twentieth century, the study and practice of selective human breeding known as eugenics sought to counter dysgenic aspects within the human gene pool and to improve overall human “genetic qualities.” Researchers in the United States, Britain, Canada, and Germany (where, under Adolf Hitler, eugenics operated under the banner of “racial hygiene” and allowed Josef Mengele, Otmar von Verschuer, and others to perform horrific experiments on live human beings in concentration camps to test their genetic theories) were interested in weeding out “inferior” human bloodlines and used studies to insinuate heritability between certain families and illnesses such as schizophrenia, blindness, deafness, dwarfism, bipolar disorder, and depression. Their published reports fueled the eugenics movement to develop state laws in the 1800s and 1900s that forcefully sterilized persons considered unhealthy or mentally ill in order to prevent them from “passing on” their genetic inferiority to future generations. Such laws were not abolished in the U.S. until the mid-twentieth century, leading to more than sixty thousand sterilized Americans in the meantime. Between 1934 and 1937, the Nazis likewise sterilized an estimated four hundred thousand people they deemed of inferior genetic stock while also setting forth to selectively exterminate the Jews as “genetic aberrations” under the same program. Transhumanist goals of using biotechnology, nanotechnology, mind-interfacing, and related sciences to create a superior man and thus classifications of persons—the enhanced and the unenhanced—opens the door for a new form of eugenics and social Darwinism.

## GERM-LINE GENETIC ENGINEERING

Germ-line genetic engineering has the potential to actually achieve the goals of the early eugenics movement (which sought to create superior humans via improving genetics through selective breeding) through genetically modifying human genes in very early embryos, sperm, and eggs. As a result, germ-line engineering is considered by some conservative bioethicists to be the most dangerous of human-

enhancement technology, as it has the power to truly reassemble the very nature of humanity into posthuman, altering an embryo's every cell and leading to inheritable modifications extending to all succeeding generations. Debate over germ-line engineering is therefore most critical, because as changes to "downline" genetic offspring are set in motion, the nature and physical makeup of mankind will be altered with no hope of reversal, thereby permanently reshaping humanity's future. A respected proponent of germ-line technology is Dr. Gregory Stock, who, like cyborgist Kevin Warwick, departs from Kurzweil's version of Humans 2.0 first arriving as a result of computer Singularity. Stock believes man can choose to transcend existing biological limitations in the nearer future (at or before computers reach strong artificial intelligence) through germ-line engineering. If we can make better humans by adding new genes to their DNA, he asks, why shouldn't we? "We have spent billions to unravel our biology, not out of idle curiosity, but in the hope of bettering our lives. We are not about to turn away from this," he says, before admitting elsewhere that this could lead to "clusters of genetically enhanced superhumans who will dominate if not enslave us." The titles to Stock's books speak for themselves concerning what germ-line engineering would do to the human race. The name of one is *Redesigning Humans: Our Inevitable Genetic Future* and another is *Metaman: The Merging of Humans and Machines into a Global Superorganism*.

Besides the short list above, additional areas of concern where Christian leaders may wish to become well advised on the pros and cons of enhancement technology include immortalism, postgenderism, augmented reality, cryonics, designer babies, neurohacking, mind uploading, neural implants, xenotransplantation, reprogenetics, rejuvenation, radical life extension, and more.

#### HEAVEN AND HELL SCENARIOS

While positive advances either already have been or will come from some of the science and technology fields we are discussing, learned men like Prof. Francis Fukuyama, in his book, *Our Posthuman Future: Consequences of the Biotechnology Revolution*, warn that unintended consequences resulting from what mankind has now set in motion represents the most dangerous time in earth's history, a period when



exotic technology in the hands of transhumanist ambitions could forever alter what it means to be human. To those who would engineer a transhuman future, Fukuyama warns of a dehumanized “hell scenario” in which we “no longer struggle, aspire, love, feel pain, make difficult moral choices, have families, or do any of the things that we traditionally associate with being human.” In this ultimate identity crisis, we would “no longer have the characteristics that give us human dignity” because, for one thing, “people dehumanized à la Brave New World...don’t know that they are dehumanized, and, what is worse, would not care if they knew. They are, indeed, happy slaves with a slavish happiness.” The “hell scenario” envisioned by Fukuyama is but a beginning to what other intelligent thinkers believe could go wrong.

On the other end of the spectrum and diametrically opposed to Fukuyama’s conclusions is an equally energetic crowd that subscribes to a form of technological utopianism called the “heaven scenario.” Among this group, a “who’s who” of transhumanist evangelists such as Ray Kurzweil, James Hughes, Nick Bostrom, and Gregory Stock see the dawn of a new Age of Enlightenment arriving as a result of the accelerating pace of GRIN (genetics, robotics, artificial intelligence, and nanotechnology) technologies. As with the eighteenth-century Enlightenment in which intellectual and scientific reason elevated the authority of scientists over priests, techno-utopians believe they will triumph over prophets of doom by “stealing fire from the gods, breathing life into inert matter, and gaining immortality. Our efforts to become something more than human have a long and distinguished genealogy. Tracing the history of those efforts illuminates human nature. In every civilization, in every era, we have given the gods no peace.” Such men are joined in their quest for godlike constitutions by a growing list of official U.S. departments that dole out hundreds of millions of dollars each year for science and technology research. The National Science Foundation and the United States Department of Commerce anticipated this development over a decade ago, publishing the government report *Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance* ([download here](#))—complete with diagrams and bullet points—to lay out the blueprint for the radical evolution of man and machine. Their vision imagined that, starting around the year 2012, the “heaven scenario” would begin to be manifested and quickly result in (among other things):

- The transhuman body being “more durable, healthy, energetic, easier to repair, and resistant to many kinds of stress, biological threats, and aging processes.”
- Brain-machine interfacing that will “transform work in factories, control automobiles, ensure military superiority, and enable new sports, art forms and modes of interaction between people.
- “Engineers, artists, architects, and designers will experience tremendously expanded creative abilities,” in part through “improved understanding of the wellspring of human creativity.”
- “Average persons, as well as policymakers, will have a vastly improved awareness of the cognitive, social, and biological forces operating their lives, enabling far better adjustment, creativity, and daily decision making....
- “Factories of tomorrow will be organized” around “increased human-machine capabilities.”

Beyond how human augmentation and biological reinvention would spread into the wider culture following 2012 (the same date former counter-terrorism czar, Richard Clark, in his book, *Breakpoint*, predicted serious GRIN rollout), the government report detailed the especially important global and economic aspects of genetically superior humans acting in superior ways, offering how, as a result of GRIN leading to techno-sapien DNA upgrading, brain-to-brain interaction, human-machine interfaces, personal sensory device interfaces, and biological war fighting systems, “The twenty-first century could end in world peace, universal prosperity, and evolution to a higher level [as] humanity become[s] like a single, transcendent nervous system, an interconnected ‘brain’ based in new core pathways of society.” The first version of the government’s report asserted that the only real roadblock to this “heaven scenario” would be the “catastrophe” that would be unleashed if society fails to employ the technological opportunities available to us now. “We may not have the luxury of delay, because the remarkable economic, political and even violent turmoil of recent years implies that

the world system is unstable. If we fail to chart the direction of change boldly, we may become the victims of unpredictable catastrophe.” This argument parallels what is currently echoed in military corridors, where sentiments hold that failure to commit resources to develop GRIN as the next step in human and technological evolution will only lead to others doing so ahead of us and using it for global domination.

The seriousness of this for the conceivable future is significant enough that a recent House Foreign Affairs (HFA) committee chaired by California Democrat Brad Sherman, best known for his expertise on the spread of nuclear weapons and terrorism, is among a number of government panels currently studying the implications of genetic modification and human-transforming technologies related to future terrorism. Congressional Quarterly columnist Mark Stencel listened to the HFA committee hearings and wrote in his March 15, 2009, article, “Futurist: Genes without Borders,” that the conference “sounded more like a Hollywood pitch for a sci-fi thriller than a sober discussion of scientific reality...with talk of biotech’s potential for creating supersoldiers, superintelligence, and superanimals [that could become] agents of unprecedented lethal force.” George Annas, Lori Andrews, and Rosario Isasi were even more apocalyptic in their American Journal of Law and Medicine article, “Protecting the Endangered Human: Toward an International Treaty Prohibiting Cloning and Inheritable Alterations,” when they wrote:

The new species, or “posthuman,” will likely view the old “normal” humans as inferior, even savages, and fit for slavery or slaughter. The normals, on the other hand, may see the posthumans as a threat and if they can, may engage in a preemptive strike by killing the posthumans before they themselves are killed or enslaved by them. It is ultimately this predictable potential for genocide that makes species-altering experiments potential weapons of mass destruction, and makes the unaccountable genetic engineer a potential bioterrorist.

Observations like those of Annas, Andrews, and Isasi support Prof. Hugo de Garis’ nightmarish vision (The Artillect War) of a near future wherein artillects and posthumans join against “normals” in an incomprehensible

war leading to gigadeath. Notwithstanding such warnings, the problem could be unavoidable, as Prof. Gregory Stock, in his well-researched and convincing book, *Redesigning Humans: Our Inevitable Genetic Future*, argues that stopping what we have already started (planned genetic enhancement of humans) is impossible. “We simply cannot find the brakes.” Scientist Verner Vinge agrees, adding, “Even if all the governments of the world were to understand the ‘threat’ and be in deadly fear of it, progress toward the goal would continue. In fact, the competitive advantage—economic, military, even artistic—of every advance in automation is so compelling that passing laws, or having customs, that forbid such things merely assures that someone else will get them first.” In what we found to be a bit unnerving, academic scientists and technical consultants to the U.S. Pentagon have advised the agency that the principal argument by Vinge is correct. As such, the United States could be forced into large-scale species-altering output, including human enhancement for military purposes. This is based on solid military intelligence, which suggests that America’s competitors (and potential enemies) are privately seeking to develop the same this century and use it to dominate the U.S. if they can. This worrisome “government think tank” scenario is even shared by the JASONS—the celebrated scientists on the Pentagon’s most prestigious scientific advisory panel who now perceive “Mankind 2.0” as the next arms race. Just as the old Soviet Union and the United States with their respective allies competed for supremacy in nuclear arms following the Second World War through the 1980s (what is now commonly known as “the nuclear arms race during the cold war”), the JASONS “are worried about adversaries’ ability to exploit advances in Human Performance Modification, and thus create a threat to national security,” wrote military analyst Noah Shachtman in “Top Pentagon Scientists Fear Brain-Modified Foes.” This recent special for *Wired* magazine was based on a leaked military report in which the JASONS admitted concern over “neuro-pharmaceutical performance enhancement and brain-computer interfaces” technology being developed by other countries ahead of the United States. “The JASONS are recommending that the American military push ahead with its own performance-enhancement research—and monitor foreign studies—to make sure that the U.S.’ enemies don’t suddenly become smarter, faster, or better able to endure the harsh realities of war than American troops,” the article continued. “The

JASONS are particularly concerned about [new technologies] that promote ‘brain plasticity’—rewiring the mind, essentially, by helping to ‘permanently establish new neural pathways, and thus new cognitive capabilities.’” Though it might be tempting to disregard the conclusions by the JASONS as a rush to judgment on the emerging threat of technosapiens, it would be a serious mistake to do so. As GRIN technologies continue to race toward an exponential curve, parallel to these advances will be the increasingly sophisticated argument that societies must take control of human biological limitations and move the species—or at least some of its members—into new forms of existence. Prof. Nigel M. de S. Cameron, director for the Council for Biotechnology Policy in Washington DC, documents this move, concluding that the genie is out of the bottle and that “the federal government’s National Nanotechnology Initiative’s Web site already gives evidence of this kind of future vision, in which human dignity is undermined by [being transformed into posthumans].” Dr. C. Christopher Hook, a member of the government committee on human genetics who has given testimony before the U.S. Congress, offered similar insight on the state of the situation:

[The goal of posthumanism] is most evident in the degree to which the U.S. government has formally embraced transhumanist ideals and is actively supporting the development of transhumanist technologies. The U.S. National Science Foundation, together with the U.S. Department of Commerce, has initiated a major program (NBIC) for converging several technologies (including those from which the acronym is derived—nanotechnology, biotechnologies, information technologies and cognitive technologies, e.g., cybernetics and neurotechnologies) for the express purpose of enhancing human performance. The NBIC program director, Mihail Roco, declared at the second public meeting of the project...that the expenditure of financial and human capital to pursue the needs of reengineering humanity by the U.S. government will be second in equivalent value only to the moon landing program.

The presentation by Mihail Roco to which Dr. Hook refers is contained in the 482-page report, *Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance*, commissioned by the U.S. National Science Foundation and

Department of Commerce. Among other things, the report discusses planned applications of human enhancement technologies in the military (and in rationalization of the human-machine interface in industrial settings) wherein Darpa is devising “Nano, Bio, Info, and Cogno” scenarios “focused on enhancing human performance.” The plan echoes a Mephistophelian bargain (a deal with the devil) in which “a golden age” merges technological and human cognition into “a single, distributed and interconnected brain.” Just visiting the U.S. Army Research Laboratory’s Web site is dizzying in this regard, with its cascading pages of super-soldier technology categories including molecular genetics and genomics; biochemistry, microbiology and biodegradation; and neurophysiology and cognitive neurosciences. If we can so easily discover these facts on the Web, just imagine what is happening in Special Access Programs (saps) where, according to the Senate’s own Commission on Protecting and Reducing Government Secrecy, there are hundreds of “waived saps”—the blackest of black programs—functioning at any given time beyond congressional oversight. Because of this and given the seriousness of weaponized biology and human enhancement technology blossoming so quickly, on May 24, 2010, a wide range of experts from the military, the private sector, and academia gathered in Washington DC for an important conference titled “Warring Futures: A Future Tense Event: How Biotech and Robotics are Transforming Today’s Military—and How That Will Change the Rest of Us.” Participants explored how human enhancement and related technologies are unfolding as an emerging battlefield strategy that will inevitably migrate to the broader culture, and what that means for the future of humanity. As the conference Web site noted:

New technologies are changing warfare as profoundly as did gunpowder. How are everything from flying robots as small as birds to “peak warrior performance” biology [human enhancement] altering the nature of the military as an institution, as well as the ethics and strategy of combat? How will the adoption of emerging technologies by our forces or others affect our understanding of asymmetrical conflict? New technologies are always embraced wherever there is the greatest competition for advantage, but quickly move out to the rest of us not engaged in sport or warfare.

The impressive list of speakers at the DC conference included Vice Admiral Joseph W. Dyer (U.S. Navy, retired), president of the Government and Industrial Robots Division at iRobot; Major General Robert E. Schmidle Jr., United States Marine Corps lead for the 2010 Quadrennial Defense Review; Robert Wright, author of *The Evolution of God* and a Global Governance Fellow; P. W. Singer, Senior Fellow and director of the Twenty-First Century Defense Initiative at the Brookings Institution; Stephen Tillery from the Harrington Department of Bioengineering at Arizona State University; and Jon Mogford, acting deputy director of the Defense Sciences Office at Darpa.

Having taken the lead in human-enhancement studies as a U.S. military objective decades ago, Darpa saw the writing on the wall and in scenes reminiscent of Saruman the wizard creating monstrous Uruk-Hai to wage unending, merciless war (from J. R. R. Tolkien's *Lord of the Rings*), began investing billions of American tax dollars into the Pentagon's Frankensteinian dream of "super-soldiers" and "extended performance war fighter" programs. Not only has this research led to diagrams of soldiers "with hormonal, neurological, and genetic concoctions; implanting microchips and electrodes in their bodies to control their internal organs and brain functions; and plying them with drugs that deaden some of their normal human tendencies: the need for sleep, the fear of death, [and] the reluctance to kill their fellow human beings," but as Chris Floyd, in an article for *CounterPunch* a while back, continued, "some of the research now underway involves actually altering the genetic code of soldiers, modifying bits of DNA to fashion a new type of human specimen, one that functions like a machine, killing tirelessly for days and nights on end...mutations [that] will 'revolutionize the contemporary order of battle' and guarantee 'operational dominance across the whole range of potential U.S. military employments.'"

Related to these developments and unknown to most Americans was a series of hushed events following the sacking of Admiral John Poindexter (who served as the director of the Darpa Information Awareness Office from 2002 to 2003) during a series of flaps, which resulted in public interest into the goings-on at the agency and brief discovery of Darpa's advanced human enhancement research. When the ensuing political

pressure led the Senate Appropriations Committee to take a deeper look into just how money was flowing through Darpa, the staffers were shocked to find “time-reversal methods” in the special focus area, and unstoppable super-soldiers—enhanced warriors with extra-human physical, physiological, and cognitive abilities that even allowed for “communication by thought alone” on the drawing board. Prof. Joel Garreau, investigative journalist, provides a summary of what happened next:

The staffers went down the list of Darpa’s projects, found the ones with titles that sounded frighteningly as though they involved the creation of a master race of superhumans, and zeroed out their budgets from the defense appropriations bill. There is scant evidence they knew much, if anything, about these projects. But we will probably never know the details, because significant people are determined that the whole affair be forever shrouded in mystery. The levels of secrecy were remarkable even for Darpa; they were astounding by the standards of the notoriously leaky Senate. Even insiders said it was hard to get a feel for what the facts really were. It took months of reporting and questioning, poking, and prodding even to get a formal “no comment” either from the leadership of the Senate Appropriations Committee or from Anthony J. Tether, the director of Darpa.

A careful study of Darpa’s programs a year later, however, showed little change. Considerable creative budgetary maneuvering ensued. The peas of quite a few programs now reside under new, and much better camouflaged, shells. “They’re saying, ‘Okay, this is the second strike. Do we have to go three strikes?’” one manager said. “It doesn’t stop anything. We’ll be smarter about how we position things.” Meanwhile, he said, new human enhancement programs are in the pipeline, “as bold or bolder” than the ones that preceded them.

Recent hints at Darpa’s “bold or bolder” investment in human enhancement as part of an emerging arms race is reflected in two of its newest projects (launched July 2010), titled “Biochronicity and Temporal



Mechanisms Arising in Nature” and “Robustness of Biologically-Inspired Networks,” in which the express intention of transforming “biology from a descriptive to a predictive field of science” in order to boost “biological design principles” in troop performance is made. Darpa’s Department of Defense Fiscal Year 2011 President’s Budget also includes funding for science that will lead to “editing a soldier’s DNA” while more exotically providing millions of dollars for the creation of “BioDesign,” a mysterious artificial life project with military applications in which Darpa plans to eliminate the randomness of natural evolution “by advanced genetic engineering and molecular biology technologies,” the budget report states. The language in this section of the document actually speaks of eliminating “cell death” through creation of “a new generation of regenerative cells that could ultimately be programmed to live indefinitely.” In other words, whatever this synthetic life application is (Wired magazine described it as “living, breathing creatures”), the plan is to make it immortal.

Not everybody likes the imperatives espoused by Darpa and other national agencies, and from the dreamy fantasies of Star Trek to the dismal vision of Aldous Huxley’s Brave New World, some have come to believe there are demons hiding inside transhumanism’s mystical (or mythical?) “Shangri-la.”

“Many of the writers [of the U.S. National Science Foundation and Department of Commerce Commissioned Report: Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance cited above] share a faith in technology which borders on religiosity, boasting of miracles once thought to be the province of the Almighty,” write the editors of The New Atlantis: A Journal of Technology and Society. “[But] without any serious reflection about the hazards of technically manipulating our brains and our consciousness... a different sort of catastrophe is nearer at hand. Without honestly and seriously assessing the consequences associated with these powerful new [GRIN] technologies, we are certain, in our enthusiasm and fantasy and pride, to rush headlong into disaster.”

Few people would be more qualified than computer scientist Bill Joy to announce these dangers, or to outline the “hell scenario” that could unfold as a result of GRIN. Yet it must have come as a real surprise to

some of those who remembered him as the level-headed Silicon Valley scientist and co-founder of Sun Microsystems (SM) when, as chief scientist for the corporation, he released a vast and now-famous essay, “Why the Future Doesn’t Need Us,” arguing how GRIN would threaten in the very near future to obliterate mankind. What was extraordinary about Joy’s prophecy was how he saw himself—and people like him—as responsible for building the very machines that “will enable the construction of the technology that may replace our species.”

“From the very moment I became involved in the creation of new technologies, their ethical dimensions have concerned me,” he begins. But it was not until the autumn of 1998 that he became “anxiously aware of how great are the dangers facing us in the twenty-first century.” Joy dates his “awakening” to a chance meeting with Ray Kurzweil, whom he talked with in a hotel bar during a conference at which they both spoke. Kurzweil was finishing his manuscript for *The Age of Spiritual Machines* and the powerful descriptions of sentient robots and near-term enhanced humans left Joy taken aback, “especially given Ray’s proven ability to imagine and create the future,” Joy wrote. “I already knew that new technologies like genetic engineering and nanotechnology were giving us the power to remake the world, but a realistic and imminent scenario for intelligent robots surprised me.”

Over the weeks and months following the hotel conversation, Joy puzzled over Kurzweil’s vision of the future until finally it dawned on him that genetic engineering, robotics, artificial intelligence, and nanotechnology posed “a different threat than the technologies that have come before. Specifically, robots, engineered organisms, and nanobots share a dangerous amplifying factor: They can self-replicate. A bomb is blown up only once—but one bot can become many, and quickly get out of control.” The unprecedented threat of self-replication particularly burdened Joy because, as a computer scientist, he thoroughly understood the concept of out-of-control replication or viruses leading to machine systems or computer networks being disabled. Uncontrolled self-replication of nanobots or engineered organisms would run “a much greater risk of substantial damage in the physical world,” Joy concluded before adding his deeper fear:

What was different in the twentieth century? Certainly, the technologies underlying the weapons of mass destruction (WMD)—nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC)—were powerful, and the weapons an enormous threat. But building nuclear weapons required...highly protected information; biological and chemical weapons programs also tended to require large-scale activities.

The twenty-first-century technologies—genetics, nanotechnology, and robotics...are so powerful that they can spawn whole new classes of accidents and abuses. Most dangerously, for the first time, these accidents and abuses are widely within the reach of individuals or small groups. They will not require large facilities or rare raw materials. Knowledge alone will enable the use of them.

Thus we have the possibility not just of weapons of mass destruction but of knowledge-enabled mass destruction (KMD), this destructiveness hugely amplified by the power of self-replication.

I think it is no exaggeration to say we are on the cusp of the *further perfection of extreme evil*, an evil whose possibility spreads well beyond that which weapons of mass destruction bequeathed to the nation states, on to a surprising and terrible empowerment [emphasis added].

Joy's prophecy about self-replicating "extreme evil" as an imminent and enormous transformative power that threatens to rewrite the laws of nature and permanently alter the course of life as we know it was frighteningly revived this year in the creation of Venter's "self-replicating" Synthia species (Venter's description). Parasites such as the mycoplasma mycoides that Venter modified to create Synthia can be resistant to antibiotics and acquire and smuggle DNA from one species to another, causing a variety of diseases. The dangers represented by Synthia's self-replicating parasitism has thus refueled Joy's opus and given experts in the field of counter-terrorism sleepless nights over how extremists could use open-source information to create a Frankenstein version of Synthia in fulfillment of Carl Sagan's Pale Blue Dot, which Joy

quoted as, “the first moment in the history of our planet when any species, by its own voluntary actions, has become a danger to itself.” As a dire example of the possibilities this represents, a genetically modified version of mouse pox was created not long ago that immediately reached 100 percent lethality. If such pathogens were unleashed into population centers, the results would be catastrophic. This is why Joy and others were hoping a few years ago that a universal moratorium or voluntary relinquishment of GRIN developments would be initiated by national laboratories and governments. But the genie is so far out of the bottle today that even college students are attending annual synthetic biology contests (such as the International Genetically Engineered Machine Competition, or iGEM) where nature-altering witches’ brews are being concocted by the scores, splicing and dicing DNA into task-fulfilling living entities. For instance, the iGEM 2009 winners built “E. chromi”—a programmable version of the bacteria that often leads to food poisoning, *Escherichia coli* (commonly abbreviated *E. coli*). A growing list of similar DNA sequences are readily available over the Internet, exasperating security experts who see the absence of universal rules for controlling what is increasingly available through information networks as threatening to unleash a “runaway sorcerer’s apprentice” with unavoidable biological fallout. Venter and his collaborators say they recognize this danger—that self-replicating biological systems like the ones they are building—hold peril as well as hope, and they have joined in calling on Congress to enact laws to attempt to control the flow of information and synthetic “recipes” that could provide lethal new pathogens for terrorists. The problem, as always, is getting all of the governments in the world to voluntarily follow a firm set of ethics or rules. This is wishful thinking at best. It is far more likely the world is racing toward what Joel Garreau was first to call the “hell scenario”—a moment in which human-driven GRIN technologies place earth and all its inhabitants on course to self-eradication.

Ironically, some advocates of posthumanity are now using the same threat scenario to advocate for transhumanism as the best way to deal with the inevitable extinction of mankind via GRIN. At the global interdisciplinary institute Metanexus ([www.metanexus.net/](http://www.metanexus.net/)), Mark Walker, assistant professor at New Mexico State University (who holds the Richard L. Hedden of Advanced Philosophical Studies Chair) concludes

like Bill Joy that “technological advances mean that there is a high probability that a human-only future will end in extinction.” From this he makes a paradoxical argument:

In a nutshell, the argument is that even though creating posthumans may be a very dangerous social experiment, it is even more dangerous not to attempt it....

I suspect that those who think the transhumanist future is risky often have something like the following reasoning in mind: (1) If we alter human nature then we will be conducting an experiment whose outcome we cannot be sure of. (2) We should not conduct experiments of great magnitude if we do not know the outcome. (3) We do not know the outcome of the transhumanist experiment. (4) So, we ought not to alter human nature.

The problem with the argument is.... Because genetic engineering is already with us, and it has the potential to destroy civilization and create posthumans, we are already entering uncharted waters, so we must experiment. The question is not whether to experiment, but only the residual question of which social experiment will we conduct. Will we try relinquishment? This would be an unparalleled social experiment to eradicate knowledge and technology. Will it be the steady-as-she-goes experiment where for the first time governments, organizations and private citizens will have access to knowledge and technology that (accidentally or intentionally) could be turned to civilization ending purposes? Or finally, will it be the transhumanist social experiment where we attempt to make beings brighter and more virtuous to deal with these powerful technologies?

I have tried to make at least a prima facie case that transhumanism promises the safest passage through twenty-first century technologies.

Katherine Hayles, professor of English at the University of California, in her book *How We Became Posthuman* takes it one step further, warning that, “Humans can either go gently into that good night, joining the

dinosaurs as a species that once ruled the earth but is now obsolete, or hang on for a while longer by becoming machines themselves. In either case...the age of the human is drawing to a close.”

#### WHAT WE PROPOSE

While the “counter theological discourse” Brent Waters mentioned at the start of this letter would be reflective of the everlasting gospel of human redemption through the person of Jesus Christ and antithetical to Mark Walker's salvation plan via transhumanism, any serious positional paper must address the difficult philosophical and ethical questions raised by modern technology and the portentous move by governments and powers to use biological sciences to remanufacture mankind. The message would need to be relevant and appeal to the questions and style of a generation raised during the Digital Revolution, an age of personal computing and information-sharing technology that for many of us represents a shift away from the Industrial Revolution's outdated methods of communicating. The need to parse information is changing so rapidly that we expect to hit the knee of the techno-info curve sometime around the year 2012, followed by Singularity and critical mass. As a result, we are teaming with a group of ministries and intellectuals to organize a new national conference, the World Congress on Emerging Threats and Challenges (tentative conference title), the first of which is to be held the third week of July 2011 in Branson, Missouri. More information on this event—and why you should be there—will be posted before the end of 2010 at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com), including how the conference will address, among other things, the need for a comprehensive and international statement on human enhancement and a Christian Manifesto on GRIN Technology and Human Dignity.

In the meantime, this open letter is a personal invitation to pastors and Christian leaders to offer feedback and comments on the abbreviated information above and/or to be considered as a signatory of the Christian Manifesto on GRIN Technology and Human Dignity planned for discussion at the World Congress on Emerging Threats and Challenges. If you would like to participate in this urgent first step by contributing research or information, we welcome all philosophical and scientific reasoning that is

firmly tethered to biblical truth. Please contact us by emailing [tomhorn@defenderpublishing.com](mailto:tomhorn@defenderpublishing.com)

#### POSTSCRIPT

Why should Christian leaders be involved in the human enhancement debate? Because transhumanists in league with US National agencies are hard at work defining the guidelines for public policy that the rest of us will live with. They question what is morally wrong with "playing God" and refuse to be mired in "theological" limitations, even if such is important to "theists." Note this in the excerpt from the new US National Science Foundation Report [“Ethics of Human Enhancement: 25 Questions & Answers”](#)

"It is not just the world around us that we desire to change. Since the beginning of history, we also have wanted to become more than human, to become Homo superior. From the godlike command of Gilgamesh, to the lofty ambitions of Icarus, to the preternatural strength of Beowulf, to the mythical skills of Shaolin monks, and to various shamans and shapeshifters throughout the world's cultural history, we have dreamt—and still dream—of transforming ourselves to overcome our all-too-human limitations.

"With ongoing work to unravel the mysteries of our minds and bodies, coupled with the art and science of emerging technologies, we are near the start of the Human Enhancement Revolution.

"As examples of emerging technologies in the last year or so, a couple imaginative inventions in particular, among many, are closing the gap even more between science fiction and the real world. Scientists have conceptualized... a touch display designed to be implanted just under the skin that would activate special tattoo ink on one's arm to form images, such as telephone-number keys to punch or even a video to watch (Mielke, 2008). Together with ever-shrinking computing devices, we appear to be moving closer to cybernetic organisms (or "cyborgs"), that is, where machines are integrated with our bodies...

"...we can [also] envision the possibility that prosthetic flippers, designed today for dolphins, along with artificial gills, etc., might be requested by humans who want to transform into an aquatic animal...

"Finally, we will mention here the related, persistent concern that we are playing God with world-changing technologies, which is presumably bad (Peters, 2007). But what exactly counts as 'playing God', and why is that morally wrong; i.e., where exactly is the proscription in religious scripture?

"We do not wish to be mired in such theological issues, as important as they are to theists..."

-----  
Resources used in this letter:

Rod Dreher, "Vatican Bioethics Document and Competing Moral Visions," BeliefNet (12/12/08)

C. S. Lewis, *The Abolition of Man*

"Ethics of Human Enhancement," Human Enhancement Ethics Group

*American Journal of Law and Medicine*, vol. 28, nos. 2 and 3 (2002), 162.

As quoted by Margaret McLean, phd., "Redesigning Humans: The Final Frontier"

"The Coming Technological Singularity," presented at the Vision-21 Symposium sponsored by Nasa Lewis Research Center and the Ohio Aerospace Institute (3/30–31/93).

Noah Shachtman, "Top Pentagon Scientists Fear Brain-Modified Foes," *Wired* (6/9/08)

Nigel M. de S. Cameron, *Human Dignity in the Biotech Century* (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004) 75.



Mihail Roco, *Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance* (U.S. National Science Foundation and Department of Commerce, 2002) 6.

[http://www.newamerica.net/events/2010/warring\\_futures\\_a\\_future\\_tense\\_event](http://www.newamerica.net/events/2010/warring_futures_a_future_tense_event)

Chris Floyd, "Monsters, Inc.: The Pentagon Plan to Create Mutant 'Super-Soldiers,'" *CounterPunch* (1/13/03).

Garreau, *Radical Evolution*: 269–270.

Katie Drummond, "Holy Acronym, Darpa! 'Batman & Robin' to Master Biology, Outdo Evolution," *Wired* (7/6/10)

Katie Drummond, "Darpa's News Plans: Crowdsourcing Intel, Edit DNA," *Wired* (2/2/10)

Katie Drummond, "Pentagon Looks to Breed Immortal 'Synthetic Organisms,' Molecular Kill-Switch Included," *Wired* (2/5/10)

Institute for Responsible Technology

Waclaw Szybalski, *In Vivo and in Vitro Initiation of Transcription*, 405. In A. Kohn and A. Shatkay (eds.), *Control of Gene Expression*, 23–24, and Discussion 404–405 (Szybalski's concept of Synthetic Biology), 411–412, 415–417 (New York: Plenum, 1974).

"First Self-Replicating Synthetic Bacterial Cell," J. Craig Venter Institute

Peter E. Nielsen, "Triple Helix: Designing a New Molecule of Life," *Scientific American* (12/08)

Charles W. Colson, *Human Dignity in the Biotech Century* (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004) 8.

C. Christopher Hook, *Human Dignity in the Biotech Century* (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004) 80–81.

Garreau, *Radical Evolution*, 116.

Francis Fukuyama, *Our Posthuman Future: Consequences of the Biotechnology Revolution* (New York: Picador, 2002) 6.

Garreau, 106.

Garreau, *Radical Evolution*, 113–114.

“Carried Away with Convergence,” *New Atlantis* (Summer 2003) 102–105

Bill Joy, “Why the Future Doesn’t Need Us,” *Wired* (April 2000) )

Mark Walker, “Ship of Fools: Why Transhumanism is the Best Bet to Prevent the Extinction of Civilization,” *Metanexus Institute* (2/5/09)

Leon R. Kass, *Life, Liberty, and the Defense of Dignity: The Challenge for Bioethics* (New York: Encounter, 10/25/02).

Rick Weiss, “Of Mice, Men, and In-Between,” *MSNBC* (11/20/04)

[http://news.yahoo.com/s/cq/20090315/pl\\_cq\\_politics/politics3075228](http://news.yahoo.com/s/cq/20090315/pl_cq_politics/politics3075228)

*American Journal of Law and Medicine*, vol. 28, nos. 2 and 3 (2002), 162.

As quoted by Margaret McLean, phd., “Redesigning Humans: The Final Frontier”

“The Coming Technological Singularity,” presented at the Vision-21 Symposium sponsored by Nasa Lewis Research Center and the Ohio Aerospace Institute (3/30–31/93).

Noah Shachtman, “Top Pentagon Scientists Fear Brain-Modified Foes,” *Wired* (6/9/08)

Nigel M. de S. Cameron, *Human Dignity in the Biotech Century* (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004) 75.

Mihail Roco, *Converging Technologies for Improving Human Performance* (U.S. National Science Foundation and Department of Commerce, 2002)

6.

[http://www.newamerica.net/events/2010/warring\\_futures\\_a\\_future\\_tense\\_event](http://www.newamerica.net/events/2010/warring_futures_a_future_tense_event)

- 2. On pages 261-263, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* illustrate how persons of all ages – from youth to seniors – can be effective champions against the spiritual forces operating behind transhumanism. Does this encourage you to know that a single person of faith could experience the power of God operating through them in this way?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Important lessons that could be discussed regarding the story of David vs. Goliath and that could be used to mirror our contemporary challenge regarding any modern expressions of nephilim / transhumanism activity might include:
1. Romans 15:4 says that "whatever was written in earlier times was written for our instruction that through perseverance and the encouragement of the scriptures we might have hope."
  2. Man looks at the outward appearance, but God looks at the heart (1 Samuel 16:7)
  3. We cannot fit another's armor. Each of us have our own hidden armor, based on struggles we have overcome (the lion and the bear).
  4. We can look forward to victory by looking back at past successes (if God helped me overcome the bear, and again the lion, he will help me overcome the obstacles that lay ahead)
  5. Ephesians 6:10-18 speaks of the breastplate of righteousness and the shield of faith, spiritual armor reflected in David's response to Goliath: "You come against me with a sword and a spear, but I come against you in the name of the Lord Almighty, the God of the armies of Israel."

6. David was a studious shepherd. He was cautious in guarding the sheep. From paying attention and learning, he knew what to look for and how to defend the flock when necessary. The teacher may wish to make this point and have somebody read 2 Tim. 2:15: "Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the Word of Truth."
  7. It's understandable to be intimidated by outward adversity. Looking at the Valley of Elah, it is clear how Israeli could have been tactically surrounded by the Philistines. Furthermore, the Bible and archaeology support that the Philistines were more advanced in iron technology at the time of David (1 Samuel 13:19-22, Goliath's spear head was made of iron [17:7], etc) while Israel's weapons were of inferior bronze and David of course used stone. The size difference between David and Goliath would also have provided an "outward appearance" benefit to the challenging army. Yet none of these outward physical and tactical advantages made the difference when confronting a person of faith.
- b) Each of the points above can be applied to the story of Joshua and Caleb as well, but in their case they were senior citizens by the time they drove out the sons of Anak (offspring of transhuman nephilim). Perhaps discuss how:
1. While age does not always equate to wisdom, wisdom is typically gained from experience. Seniors therefore most often possess insights derived from a lifetime of encounters. This equips them to stand as "Captains and Queens," proven warriors of faith who are wise in battlefield strategy and aware of the pitfalls that so often ensnare younger or inexperienced people.
  2. Wisdom derived from age also provides better control of emotions under conflict. A University of Alberta researcher in collaboration with Duke University proved that this kind of wisdom really does come with age. An article based on this research is available at Science Daily here: <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2008/06/080612185428.htm>
  3. The Bible equates "gray hair" with wisdom and righteousness in such verses as Prov. 16:31; 1 Kings 2:6; Job 12:12; Lev. 19:32

3. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* then discuss how “Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord.” This too was a sign of the “days of Noah” that could be part of the prophecy contained in Matthew 24:37 regarding the “days of Noah.” This fact could be especially meaningful in protecting believers in an age where genetic engineering, synthetic biology, and human enhancement pose mutagenic threats that no generation since Noah’s day has been exposed to. Do you believe supernatural “grace” could protect God’s people in such an age? Against genetically modified foods? GE threats that impact the open environment? New disease strains that emerge as a result of crossing species barriers?

**TEACHERS NOTES:**

- a) The teacher may wish to ask the class to imagine how many ways Noah and his family were divinely protected in their age. Points that could be discussed include:
1. They were surrounded by **physical enemies** who would surely have killed them if possible (Gen. 6:5)
  2. They were surrounded by **spiritual enemies**. The apocryphal Book of Enoch, Jude 1:6, and 2 Peter 2:4 describe the events of Noah’s day in relation to the fallen Watchers and their transhumanist activity.
  3. They were surrounded by **competing worldviews, ideological and moral differences** espoused by agents that would have closed their mouths and stopped Noah from preaching righteousness. See 2 Peter 2:5; Hebrews 11:7; and Genesis 6:9. These verses lead to the conclusion that Noah was verbal in engaging the transhumanist debate and in repudiating the wickedness hidden within it, warning where creation-assaulting activity would lead and admonishing the world of subsequent “judgment.”
  4. They were protected from **harmful mutagenic effects on their biology**. Remind the class how in Lesson #9 the point was made from Genesis 6:9 that only Noah—and by extension, his children—were found “perfect” in their generation. The Hebrew word for “perfect” in this case is *tamiym*, which means “without blemish” or “healthy,” the same word used in Leviticus to describe an unblemished sacrificial lamb. The meaning was not that Noah was morally perfect, but that his physical makeup—his

DNA—had not been contaminated with Nephilim descent, as apparently the rest of the world had become.

- b) The teacher may also wish to discuss how Noah and his family obviously did not “buy into” the transhumanist philosophical, religious, or technological lies of their day. The points that could be made in relationship to this include:
1. This obviously did not mean Noah was a technophobe or luddite (against technology), which modern transhumanists so often stereotype those who oppose their worldview as being, as Noah had to be a very skilled technician to build an ark that would withstand the great flood while carrying and preserving so many animals.
  2. On page 264 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors write, “While the immortals known as Watchers were promising advanced technology to the world in exchange for use of human DNA (Book of Enoch, chapter 8), it must have been obvious to Noah how reminiscent this was of the serpent in the Garden who made similar promises of godlike abilities for those who partook forbidden fruit.” If the teacher has not done so already, the Book of Enoch can be downloaded from our website at <http://www.forbiddengate.com/BookOfEnoch.pdf>.
  3. The following excerpts from “The Ahriman Gate,” a novel by the authors of *Forbidden Gates* (available in combination with *Forbidden Gates* at [www.forbiddengate.com](http://www.forbiddengate.com)) may be interesting for class discussion or even provide an example of how to phrase important points. This passage connects the “alien” agenda with transhumanism and genetics:

As Jones continued to mumble and scrub the back of the item, he might as well have been talking to himself. Joe had no idea what he was so excited about.

After additional cleaning and a final close-up visual inspection, the professor placed the form on the laboratory countertop and said, “Well, Joe, you’ve either made a great discovery or found a brilliant fakery, I’m not sure which, yet. The facial image on the front appears to be adorned with a headdress similar to those worn by Egyptian pharaohs, but the writing on the back is definitely Sumerian.”

Joe cocked his head. "Do you know what it says?"

"Just one word."

"Which is?"

"Annunaki."

Gazing at the marking, Sheri said, "What does it mean?"

"Depends on who you're talking to. I would say it refers to fallen angels. Authors like Erich Von Daniken and Zecharia Sitchin would disagree, of course. They believe the Annunaki were ancient astronauts from a planet called Nibiru."

Joe's senses heightened. His dad had found the image near a UFO crash site, and now Jones was talking about visitors from beyond.

"They believe the Annunaki were intergalactic scientists who performed genetic experiments on early hominids, changing their DNA and creating Homo sapiens."

"You mean us?" Sheri asked. "People?"

"According to the theory, yes. Primates had their evolution advanced, resulting in the human race."

"Kinda like Darwin on drugs?"

"I guess you could put it that way. They get the idea from misinterpreting ancient cuneiform tablets, specifically the Annunaki legends. Portions of the Sumerian folklore are viewed as records of aliens from a mysterious twelfth planet."

"This Nibiru?"

“Uh-huh, and that they came here and created the human race. They also believe the Nibiruans engineered the giants of the Old Testament.”

Joe’s expression became quizzical. He thought about what he was hearing, then said, “But I take it you don’t agree?”

“Well...I think Earth was visited by creatures from heaven and that the giant Nephilim were produced by them, but I don’t believe these were so-called ‘extraterrestrial humanoids,’ if that’s what you’re asking.”

“But demons?”

Jones nodded. “If I understand the Bible and extrabiblical literature correctly, the Annunaki were fallen angels that left their assigned habitation and took women for wives. Nephilim were the mutant offspring of their unholy matrimony.”

“Is this in the Scriptures somewhere?” Sheri asked, glancing at Joe then back at the professor.

“I believe so, as well as other records. The Bible says that when men began increasing on earth and daughters were born to them, the Sons of God noted their beauty and took wives from among them. Are you familiar with that?”

“Somewhat.”

“Well, many scholars believe these ‘Sons of God’ were angels that fell from Heaven. When we compare that interpretation with other books—Enoch, Jubilees, Baruch, Genesis Apocryphon, Philo, Malachius, and so on, an incredible tale emerges whereby we learn that the giants of the Old Testament like Goliath were half-human, half-demon offspring of fallen angels and humans. In fact the Old Testament term for giant is from the word Nephilim, meaning ‘those who are fallen.’”



Jones motioned them to follow him back to the lounge. As they went down the hall, Joe was thinking Indy's story was getting wilder than the one he'd told. A moment later, as they resumed their positions on the couch and chair, Indy said, "According to the records I've studied, the Nephilim were built as part of a larger plan to destroy the children of God and to cut off the birth line of the Messiah."

"By crossbreeding humans and angels," Sheri said, leaning back on the couch.

"Sure. Satan understood the protoevangelium—the promise in Genesis 3:15 that a Savior would be born, the seed of the woman, and that He would destroy the Devil's power. So Satan's followers, the Annunaki, intermingled their DNA with Old Testament women in a conspiracy to stop the Messiah's birth."

"Something like a sex virus," Joe speculated, trying to grasp what Jones was saying.

As if already understanding the professor's point, Sheri added, "Something that would spread through marriage and end when humanity's DNA was completely corrupted. Under those circumstances, you're saying a spotless Son of God could not be born."

"Exactly. If the genetic makeup of man leading to the time of the Messiah was universally demonized, no Savior would be conceived, and mankind would be lost forever."

"So how come I never heard of this before?"

"I couldn't say."

Sheri bit her lip. "Well...obviously Jesus, the Messiah came in the flesh, so what foiled the Devil's plan?"

“A couple things. First, God commanded Israel not to intermarry with the heathen populations. This was so there might be a pure bloodline in Israel. Second, He ordered Noah to build an ark and to prepare for a flood that would destroy every living thing. The fact that God sent such a universal fiat of judgment like the flood illustrates how widespread the altered DNA eventually became. In fact, the Bible says only Noah, and therefore by extension his children, were found perfect in their generation.”

“Meaning they followed the laws of God,” Sheri continued.

“I’m sure they did, but that’s not what the Hebrew word for ‘perfect’ in this case means. This is the same word that was used in Leviticus to describe an unblemished sacrificial lamb. The meaning here was not moral perfection, but that Noah was physically untainted; his DNA was not corrupted or altered by the Annunaki, as apparently the rest of the world had been.”

Suddenly the light went on in Joe’s mind. He had always wondered about the scope of the deluge, why it included children. “So God sent the flood because every human on Earth except Noah’s family had been genetically altered over time?”

“Through a corrupted bloodline leading back to angels with women,” Sheri added.

“According to some people, yes.”

“But I thought Jesus said angels couldn’t get married or have babies?”

“Actually, what He said was that in the resurrection we will neither marry nor be given in marriage, but that we would be as angels in heaven. Keep in mind, Jesus was talking about angels ‘in heaven.’ We’re discussing fallen angels that, like Peter and Jude described in their epistles, abandoned their dwelling place and took up an alternative lifestyle.”

Jones paused, adjusted his legs and added, “Another thing. Look at the angels that visited Abraham in the plains of Mamre. They looked like men; they walked and talked like men; they even ate food with Abraham. So as far as scholars know, angels can take human form and carry out normal human functions. It appears from the historical record that the fallen ones also engaged in sexual activity, or at least genetic manipulation.”

Joe hunched his shoulders and looked soberly at the professor. Indy actually seemed to be making the case that fallen angels had mated with women, that these same spirits were involved in UFO activity, and that somehow this related to the image he was showing him. In order to bring the conversation back to his father’s story, he said, “But if this disc my dad saw was the remains of a physical UFO, why would angels fly around in something like that? Spiritual beings wouldn’t need spaceships to come to Earth in order to mate with women, would they?”

“Probably not, but fallen angels might create them for larger reasons.”

“Such as?”

“To deceive mankind.”

Joe scratched the top of his head. “First of all,” he said, “how could fallen angels do that? Make physical ships? Second, how would that deceive us?”

Jones stood and crossed the room to a white refrigerator. He opened the door, withdrew a small plastic bottle of water, and offered one to Joe and Sheri. They took the Perriers as he returned to his chair.

“There’s no doubt they could produce UFOs for their own nefarious reasons. The theology of transmogrification, where spirits take form, indicates ability by demons to manipulate energy and matter. And what about poltergeists and their

unexplained noises—how else could spirits cause audible vibrations unless they have ability to make physical contact with tangible materials? This being true, maybe demons produce the phenomena known as Unidentified Flying Objects by manipulating energy.”

Tapping his finger against his palm as if to emphasize the next point, Jones stressed, “And as far as how UFOs would be used to deceive us, this comes down to an argument of origins.”

“Meaning what?”

“The ageless question—where did we come from? If people believe UFO-nauts are advanced extraterrestrials scurrying about in spaceships, and that these same creatures visited the Earth in ancient days and tinkered with hominid DNA, that disturbs the Judeo-Christian doctrine concerning the age of the Earth and biblical creation. Satan would love people to believe we are nothing more than an alien zoology program. Of course,” he said, rolling his eyes, “there’s always Indy’s Theory of UFOlogy.”

“Indy’s Theory? As in your own personal theory?”

“Mine and a few others.”

Sheri smiled. “Tell us about this mysterious theory.”

“I thought you’d never ask. According to the Bible, the End Times will be accompanied by fearful sights and great signs from heaven. The book of Second Thessalonians even says that, when the Antichrist is revealed, he will be accompanied by ‘lying wonders.’ Maybe these verses are talking about UFOs being used to introduce the Man of Sin. Wouldn’t the world react to the sudden arrival of an intergalactic wise man with awe and wonder? The prophecies of Daniel seem to support this possibility.”

“You’re telling me the prophet Daniel talked about a Last Days invasion of UFOs?” Joe said, sounding incredulous.

“No, no. But he said the Antichrist will be a worshiper of Baal, and Baal was the lord of the sky. As Baalbamoth he was the lord of the aerial regions. As Baalzebub he was the lord of those that ‘fly’ or that flit about in the atmosphere. In the New Testament, Satan himself is referred to as the prince of the powers of the air. Therefore Scriptures lead me to believe that the aerial phenomena you and I interpret as UFO activity could be part of a Last Days delusion—something to trick humanity into accepting the appearance of Antichrist.”

Joe took a deep breath and exhaled slowly. UFOs could introduce the Antichrist, huh? He stared at the image. “So when it comes to these Annunaki, you believe we’re talking about fallen angels?”

“In a nutshell, yes.”

“And somehow this relates to our little image here.”

“In ways I don’t understand. To be honest, I’m amazed to see Sumerian written on it. If it’s not a fake, I would...”

“I already told you it’s real,” Joe said, defensive of his father’s claims.

Jones picked the image up and turned it over in his hand. “Don’t be offended, Joe. I’m just a professor. We’re paid to be cautious, even skeptical. So listen. I have a friend who runs an independent laboratory. He does all kinds of subcontract work for the state and federal government, mostly crime lab stuff, but also a little radiocarbon and metallurgy testing. If you’d let me borrow this thing for a couple days, I could have him run a series of tests on it to determine its age and material makeup. We could even do a photo analysis and database search to see if any comparable artifacts have been discovered or described in the past. This is the best way I know to provide an authoritative answer. With your permission, I’d like to take it to him right away.”

Joe looked at Sheri. "What do you think, Sis?"

She took a drink of her Perrier and said, "Indy's the expert. You wanted his opinion, didn't you?"

"I guess. I just need to be sure this lab guy doesn't submerge it in acid or something."

Indy laughed. "Joe, you crack me up. You worry a lot for a young man."

Jones might have understood Joe's trepidation if he had heard the entire story. Yet Joe didn't want to alarm him with all that ugly chase and gunfire business. Hedging, he finally said, "All right, go ahead and let your expert examine it. I'll contact you in a couple days to see what he thinks. In the meantime, it's probably best if you don't try calling me. And Indy," he added more solemnly than before. "Take care of this thing and keep it strictly between us."

Clearly elated with the prospect of further studying the artifact, Jones simply said, "Whatever you say, boss."

***[AND LATER IN "THE AHRIMAN GATE"]***

Corsivino frowned. "We found our dream disintegrating. No matter how we tried, we couldn't replicate the Nibiruan Key's effect on the Enigma nor obtain the vortex described by the Dropa discs. To make matters worse, the project took an unexpected turn when advanced human DNA labeling was discovered in the Dropa. It illustrated genetic manipulation done by the Annunaki thousands of years before, including specific formulas for improving the human species."

Maybe Dr. Jones knew what he was talking about after all, Joe thought.

"The formulas called for introducing animal, and, in at least one case, alien DNA into human genome. Experts at the Pentagon

quickly determined humanity had been the subject of unknown mutation experiments. They convened a black operations panel and concluded that regardless of what else the Dropa texts represented, the discovery provided a unique opportunity for human enhancement studies."

"So this is where you got involved, I take it," Dave said.

"Following the panel's above-top-secret report, genetic engineers like myself were given unprecedented resources, and the genome sciences were born."

"Sickening," Joe slipped.

Corsivino looked into his deep green eyes. "I understand. Not everybody was enthusiastic about our research back then, either. There were project scientists—those of religious persuasion—that came to believe the spacecraft and its contents were a remnant of forbidden technology, something cast down from heaven, perhaps a leftover of Lucifer's rebellion against God."

"Did they express these views?" Joe knew in the military that you usually keep your mouth shut, even when you disagree.

"A Jesuit named Malachi Malina did. He openly cautioned about dark forces he thought were trying to initiate Armageddon again, to unleash the Antichrist."

"What do you mean, trying again?"

"You know, another Hitler or Antiochus Epiphanes, except this time a very high-tech one. The Jesuit based his conclusions about the Nibiruan Key and its devilish connection on similarities between ancient history involving the Nibiruans, or Annunaki, and the genetic experiments growing out of our research."

This was really starting to sound like Jones now.

"He showed us where the Annunaki offered weapons technology to Israel's enemies in exchange for women. The antediluvian females became hosts to genetic experiments, resulting in a breed of giants called Nephilim."

"Like Goliath," Dave said.

"According to Malina, yes. Goliath was one of an army of giants, created to destroy God's people and to take over the world. God thwarted the original plan by eliminating the ancient Nephilim."

"And that was that." Dave said.

"I wish it were that simple. Malina believed history was repeating itself—that the disc recovered from Sedona was a Trojan horse—something to trick world governments into joining forces with Satan in preparation of Armageddon. Malina even speculated that the alien bodies we had recovered were demonic concoctions." ...

"Sounds like something a friend told me recently," Joe said to Corsivino.

"What's that?"

"Dr. Jones, an evangelical friend of the family, he believes aliens and demons are one and the same."

"Father Malina was convinced of it, and he claimed it was illustrated in history books from civilizations around the world."

"History books? You mean mythology, don't you?" Dave corrected.

"Both. I remember Malina discussing the Greek Titans, how their legend began with so-called gods mating with earth women. He compared that story to Genesis where the Sons of God took women for wives and their offspring became mighty men of old. He also showed us how the word Titan equals 666 in Greek and



means 'gray, whitish, or chalky gray,' fitting the skin coloration of the bodies recovered at Sedona. He certainly felt we were opening the gates to an ancient perdition by tinkering with this alien technology."

"So...he's the one that convinced you to quit?" Joe asked, referring to Malina.

"What started me thinking we scientists had been duped was a meeting between Major General William H. Layton, the secretary of defense, and Montero's top genetic researchers."

Joe recognized the Major General's name. He had heard him speak while he was stationed in Hawaii. He was definitely a command presence, not somebody to second-guess.

"He told us that Special Agent Apol Leon—a military expert of some kind—would be in charge of genetic research in our department from there on out. We were becoming an All Black operation. No information concerning our undertaking was to be divulged to any military or government departments outside our own. This was now a top-level national security issue. Of course we voiced our allegiance and reaffirmed our oaths, but the ethics of our work certainly changed after Apol Leon, and Hell, came to Montero."

It suddenly dawned on Joe that Corsivino was talking about the man on his answering machine at home. He froze and listened carefully.

"Mr. Leon was on special assignment from Wright-Patterson Airforce Base where the alien bodies were kept. After formal introduction of him, General Layton disclosed top secret information related to an advanced race of humanoids, which supposedly visited Earth some ten thousand years ago."

"What proof did they offer of that allegation?" Dave said smartly.

"What proof did they need to offer? We had the alien bodies and their ship."

Dave opened his hands, palms up. "I mean that Earth was visited ten thousand years ago?"

"According to General Layton, the aliens left evidence of their visit everywhere—the pyramids, Nazca Lines, even an ancient city on Mars where excavations were underway by joint U.S.-Soviet stealth expeditions. We were told in no uncertain terms that these aliens were our creators. Homo sapiens was the product of their genetic handiwork on apes."

Joe stared across the room at Dave's computers again. He was familiar with many U.S. political and military figures. This was astounding information and probably confirmed Dave's worst conspiracy fears. He returned his sights to Corsivino and said, "General Layton actually said that?"

"Not only that. We were told of a second, more aggressive breed of creature called Anakim. The aliens made them to rule over the newly created people. Each Anakim had the strength of ten men. They were ruthless, but outnumbered by the humans. Eventually they were killed by hordes of men after the aliens, who were also known as 'flying geniuses,' departed for outer space. According to General Layton, the death of the Anakim was recorded in the mythos of every ancient culture, including the Bible, where the Hebrews called them Nephilim."

"But why would a Major General get involved with all this mythology?"

"A newly deciphered portion of the Dropa had caught his attention. It provided the genetic formula for recreating the Anakim-Nephilim. Needless to say, the military was profoundly interested in it. This represented the ultimate soldier, a perfect killing machine, and Apol Leon was at Montero to introduce our

researchers to the technology we would use to manufacture them—the cutting-edge science of transgenics."

Joe realized he was clenching his fists again. His head was tilted down, his eyes fixed on Corsivino. He needed to calm down, think about his plan, glean as much information as he could from this man before making his move. He bit his lip and said, "So, Apol Leon came to teach you about transgenics, huh, the technology you would use to re-create the Nephilim. What does that actually mean?"

"Simply stated, transgenics is the science of altering the genetic structure of one species by introducing the DNA of a different species into its genome. Under Apol's watchful eye, transgenics at Montero developed in the form of male human embryos having their molecular biology altered through inserting animal and alien DNA into their genome."

"Just where does one get alien DNA? I assume you don't run to the corner market for it."

Corsivino grinned. "From the specimens we recovered at Sedona. Those strands produced the most fascinating and horrific results."

Dave shook his head. "I hate to think what that means."

"Mutated embryos aggressive inside their mother's wombs, highly intelligent, brutish creatures after birth, babies with phenomenal growth rates, an unequivocal thirst to rule, conquer, and dominate."

"You must have been so proud," Joe smirked again. *Remember! Diplomacy!*

"Actually, we were flabbergasted. At six months of age the real problems developed. The chimera—or Nephilim as Apol insisted we call them—became uncontrollable. Due to their size and physical strength, special cages had to be designed to hold them.

A few months after that we found it necessary to implant control chips directly into their brains."

"Evidently those chips were not foolproof at supervising your babies."

"What? Why do you say that?"

"Because at least one of them escaped," Joe said. He took a moment to fill Corsivino and Dave in on the recovery near Montero. He described the appearance of the carcass, the arm that was now in Dr. Jones's possession, and the wire inside the beast's head. He speculated that Jones was having the specimen tested at Nathan Reel's laboratory.

Corsivino's reaction was one of astonishment. "That's what he had in the blanket at the hillside? This arm?"

"Affirmative."

"Well, when and if that arm's DNA is analyzed, a fifth and sixth nucleotide will be discovered. It's unlike anything ever seen in animal or human DNA before. It could really open a can of worms."

*Good.* "And the wire in the giant's head? That was one of your control devices?"

"It's called AngelStar. It too was a product of reverse engineering, actually designed for human implantation. The aggressive nature of the Nephilim forced us to interface the neural chip with the beast's brains, in order to control them. From what I remember it caused the creatures to become lethargic when set at one hundred sixteen megahertz."

Dave, sounding like his contemptible old self again, said, "But did it satisfy naysayers?"

"What do you mean, naysayers?"

"The scientists that were uncomfortable with the project...the Malina guy and the others who thought this might be an Antichrist thing. Were they willing to go along with the research once they saw the ape-men could be controlled?"

Corsivino looked confused by the question and said, "The fact that we learned to control the beasts was a separate issue to Malina and his colleagues. Questions about the ethics of our research grew regardless, even among the nonreligious types. Eventually, I found myself among them."

Joe raised an eyebrow. "I thought you said you were a project leader?"

"I was, but you must understand, Joe, even though I knew I was breaking my own values, there was something alluring about our work. It was as if a beautiful Siren stood somewhere in the distance, bidding us to come to her. It drew us back day after day with promises of discovery and immortality. Indeed, we believed our work would immortalize us in more ways than one."

"But you were finally convinced otherwise?"

"It all came to a head one day during a casual conversation with Malachi Malina. He'd been removed from the research program at Montero a week before. The official reasoning was ambiguous, but we all knew Malachi was terminated as a result of his challenging the ethics of Montero's research. In the days following his departure, Malachi contacted several team members, including myself. He couldn't speak publicly, so he chose to address his former co-workers privately, to challenge our moral apathy. In my case, he specifically wondered why as a professing Christian I was not concerned with my role at Montero, why I couldn't see it as an affront to the divine order."

Joe was incredulous. "You're a Christian?"

"Is that so hard to believe?"

"With the work you were involved in? Yes, as a matter of fact."

"Then you and Father Malina would have agreed. He came right out and asked me. 'Andrew,' he said, 'the Bible tells us that God commands humans, animals, and plants to reproduce after their own kind. If God requires species integrity, how do you reconcile what you are doing? Your research at Montero not only violates Scripture, but could open a Pandora's box to a molecular biological nightmare.'"

"He was right," Joe said, not that he understood the science.

"I know, in many ways, I see that now. By introducing animal and alien DNA into human genome, we were breaching the species barrier and producing unclassified mutations beyond imagination."

Joe couldn't help himself. Even though he wanted to play this guy, he scoffed, "Yet you remained. I sure hope the pay was good."

"Actually, I left the program not long after Malina did."

"I remember that," Dave said, raising his finger. "It was big news."

Joe was more interested in what motivated him. "Was it a conflict of conscience, or were you just protecting your butt somehow?"

"I'd say a mixture of both, although my conscience drives me these days, believe it or not."

"That's not an answer."

"Okay, in particular, the problem for me was this: The molecular biologists at Montero classified the functions of the alien genes supplied by Apol Leon. Yet none of them knew how the gene's

coding would react from the alien species to human. There were strong possibilities that interspecies differences would measurably effect the gene's protein interactions, thus modifying the human hereditary traits in the mutations. That represented a potential catastrophe beyond measure."

Joe hoped he would rephrase the comment so he could understand the important point.

As if reading his mind, Corsivino said, "Let me put it a different way. Since interbreeding between humans and Nephilim was now theoretically possible, it was reasonable to believe the mutated DNA would get out of the bottle someday. When that happened, alien and animal characteristics would be introduced to our own species, altering the human genetic code and eventually eliminating humanity as we know it. Malachi Malina believed this was not only possible, but also perhaps the whole idea. That was something I could not be part of."

Joe was contemplative, then finally said, "Sounds like a Dr. Jones theory."

"Meaning?"

"Something the professor told me about God having to destroy the human race during Noah's flood because giants had interbred with humans. According to Jones, by the time Noah and his children came along, they were the only ones left with DNA not corrupted by intermarriage with Nephilim and their offspring. In order to preserve the human species, God had to eliminate everybody but Noah and his family."

"Jones is a smart man," Corsivino said. "What would you say if I told you a similar plan is unfolding as we speak, right beneath the world's nose?"

"I'd hope you were kidding. A plan to annihilate mankind by interbreeding humans with Nephilim? Why would anybody want to do that?"

"They are deceived. The government and military are deceived. They believe their research is leading to a super army that will police a New World Order—a better world system. Those of us in Operation Gadfly think differently. We believe Montero's work is part of a larger scheme to force Armageddon and to enslave mankind."

Dave raised his hand again. "Operation Gadfly?"

"It's a consortium of scientists dedicated to the destruction of Montero, its research and researchers, and similar factories around the world."

"You mean there's more than one factory!?"

"Oh yes. Nine others in the Alliance of Nations. Ten in total."

- 4. At the opening of Chapter Twelve in *Forbidden Gates* and again on page 265, the authors quote Brent Waters in saying “If Christians are to help shape contemporary culture—particularly in a setting in which I fear the posthuman message will prove attractive, if not seductive—then they must offer an alternative and compelling vision; a counter theological discourse so to speak.” This modern call to become Noah-like preachers of righteousness is a challenge the authors of *Forbidden Gates* believe the church can win if it takes up this task and becomes involved in the public debate. Do you agree, and if so, why?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) The teacher will benefit from the article “The Future of the Human Species (Part 1)” by Brent Waters, posted at the Center for Bioethics and Human Dignity and from which the quote above is taken. The article can be



downloaded and printed in [pdf](#) form or read online here:

<http://www.cbhd.org/content/future-human-species>

- b) Part 2 of the article above is also important and contains numerous talking points. It begins **“If a number of pundits are correct, we have already taken some initial steps toward creating a posthuman future. The goal of this project is nothing less than the perfection of the human species. Specifically, human performance will be enhanced and longevity extended through anticipated advances in pharmacology, biotechnology, and bionics.”** This second part can be downloaded in [pdf](#) or read online here: [http://cbhd.org/content/future-human-species-part-2#\\_edn3](http://cbhd.org/content/future-human-species-part-2#_edn3)
- c) SPECIAL NOTE TO TEACHER: There is an invitation on page 266 for participants to join the **Future Congress on Emerging Threats and Challenges** (final title) conference to be hosted in Branson, Missouri the third week of July, 2011, where, among other things, the need for an international statement on human enhancement and a Christian manifesto on Grin technology and human dignity will be discussed. Information on this conference will be available by January, 2011 at [www.ForbiddenGate.com](http://www.ForbiddenGate.com). If the teacher should choose to discuss with the class bringing a group to this event, special rates will be available for registration and participation by groups of 5 persons or more.
5. **According to the authors of Forbidden Gates, part of the discussion that modern “Noah’s” need to engage in their churches, home groups, and public and social settings includes issues contained in the limited set of instructions on bioethics dealing with in vitro fertilization and stem cell research, which was published by the Vatican in 2008 under the title “Dignitas Personae” or “the Dignity of the Person.” The authors also mention the 2004 “Occasional Paper No. 58” published by the Lausanne Committee for World Evangelism that briefly describes how “bioethics” could be used as a tool for evangelism. While the authors recognize these statements as containing important elements, a wider public and academic discussion is paramount, which would extend to questions of human-enhancement, policy implications, issues of fairness, access, equity, anticipated societal disruptions, military applications and more. Over the course of these weeks of study, have you imagined other**

**aspects of the needed public debate not included in the book Forbidden Gates?  
If so, what are they?**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) Lead the class in a general discussion concerning ways in which, over the last 12 weeks, they have considered “issues” that should be part of any wider public debate on the ethical and/or spiritual ramifications of human enhancement.
- b) The teacher may benefit from downloading the English version of Dignitas Personae or “the Dignity of the Person” in pdf format here:  
[http://www.usccb.org/comm/Dignitaspersonae/Dignitas\\_Personae.pdf](http://www.usccb.org/comm/Dignitaspersonae/Dignitas_Personae.pdf)
- c) The Occasional Paper No. 58, published by the LCWE can be downloaded and read here:  
[http://www.lausanne.org/documents/2004forum/LOP58\\_IG29.pdf](http://www.lausanne.org/documents/2004forum/LOP58_IG29.pdf)

- 6. On pages 269-270, the authors of Forbidden Gates quote from C. S. Lewis’s “The Abolition of Man.” They say the frightening and inhuman future depicted by Lewis will materialize in the coming decades if Christians in particular fail to take up the responsibility as new “Noah’s” to be preachers of righteousness regarding the transhuman vision. Do you agree with this assessment? If so, how quickly do you imagine this irreversible path will begin (note that even some US government reports envision anytime following the year 2012 as the start of the human enhancement revolution).**

***TEACHERS NOTES:***

- a) The teacher may find The Study Guide to the Abolition of Man at the C.S. Lewis Foundation website to be valuable here:  
<http://www.cslewis.org/resources/studyguides/Study%20Guide%20-%20The%20Abolition%20of%20Man.pdf>

The teacher can read *The Abolition of Man* online at Columbia University here: <http://www.columbia.edu/cu/augustine/arch/lewis/abolition3.htm>

- b) The teacher may also wish to point out how, in contrast to the call for becoming Noah-like preachers of righteousness in regard to a modern incarnation of Watchers philosophy via transhumanism, many Christians have already begun to adopt – wittingly or unwittingly – transhumanist ideas echoed in the warnings of C.S. Lewis, which question the historic Judeo-Christian ethic surrounding “what it means to be human.” Talking points that illustrate this from pages 268-269 regarding Catholic scientist William B. Neaves, in an essay by Rod Dreher for the *National Catholic Reporter* include:
1. The adoption of “Personhood” (possibly discussed earlier in this lesson from the OPEN LETTER by Tom Horn)
  2. Utilitarian ideas: (using human embryos as commodities)
  3. Ensoulment: (Historically, evangelical Christians in particular have held that ensoulment [the creation of a soul within a human being] happens at the moment of conception. Secular transhumanists are materialists who do not believe in a transcendent human soul, and those who do tend to place ensoulment at the moment of birth or “first breath.”)
- c) The teacher may wish to highlight the points contained in “third sign of the days of Noah” concerning angels included on pages 274-283 (this could of course be its own class later).
- d) The teacher may wish to discuss points made on the relationship between prayer and principalities starting on page 283.
- e) On page 290, the subtitle asks, “Whose vision will prevail” contrasting the Christian and transhuman worldviews. The teacher should conclude this class with that question, reminding the students that the next lesson (#13) will be the final one in this study (unless the teacher has decided to extend it) and will be a summary discussion of the conclusions reached from the first 12 weeks of study related to this question. Have the students go back through the notes they made over the last 12 weeks and highlight what they believe to be the most important aspects of this issue for final summary discussion during lesson #13.



## FORBIDDEN GATES STUDY QUESTIONS – WEEK TWELVE

(Read pages 259-274 of chapter twelve of Forbidden Gates and write out your thoughts to the questions below. Bring this with you to class for discussion)

1. On page 260 of Forbidden Gates, the authors write “But if indeed Satan has initiated an extraordinary conspiracy to revive species-altering supernaturalism as existed in Noah’s day, and assuming there is a gap between that sign and when God removes His own from this planet, the church as the body of Christ and God’s representation on earth could play a unique role as the instrument through which the Almighty, on behalf of His creation, engages this evil.” If we can “assume” there is a gap of time between the start of the human-enhancement revolution and the removal of the Church from this planet, how much time do YOU believe the Church has to engage the transhumanist debate?
2. On pages 261-263, the authors of Forbidden Gates illustrate how persons of all ages – from youth to seniors – can be effective champions against the spiritual forces operating behind transhumanism. Does this encourage you to know that a single person of faith could experience the power of God operating through them in this way?
3. The authors of Forbidden Gates then discuss how “Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord.” This too was a sign of the “days of Noah” that could be part of the prophecy contained in Matthew 24:37 regarding the “days of Noah.” This fact could be especially meaningful in protecting believers in an age where genetic engineering, synthetic biology, and human enhancement pose mutagenic threats no generation since Noah’s day has been exposed to. Do you believe supernatural “grace” could protect God’s people in such an age? Against genetically modified foods? GE threats that impact the open environment? New disease strains that emerge as a result of crossing species barriers?
4. At the opening of Chapter Twelve in Forbidden Gates and again on page 265, the authors quote Brent Waters in saying “If Christians are to help shape contemporary culture—particularly in a setting in which I fear the posthuman message will prove attractive, if not seductive—then they must offer an alternative and compelling vision; a counter theological discourse so to speak.” This modern call to become Noah-like preachers of righteousness is a challenge the authors of Forbidden Gates believe the church can win if it takes up this task and becomes involved in the public debate. Do you agree, and if so, why?
5. According to the authors of Forbidden Gates, part of the discussion that modern “Noah’s” need to engage in their churches, home groups, and public and social settings includes issues contained in the limited set of instructions on bioethics dealing with in vitro fertilization and stem cell research, which was published by the Vatican in 2008 under the title “Dignitas Personae” or “the Dignity of the Person.” The authors also mention the 2004 “Occasional Paper No. 58” published by the Lausanne Committee for World Evangelism that briefly describes how “bioethics” could be used as a tool for evangelism. While the authors recognize these statements as containing important elements, a wider public and academic discussion is paramount, which would extend to questions of human-enhancement, policy implications, issues of fairness, access, equity, anticipated societal disruptions, military applications and more. Over the course of these weeks of study, have you imagined other aspects of the needed public debate not included in the book Forbidden Gates? If so, what are they?
6. On pages 269-270, the authors of Forbidden Gates quote from C. S. Lewis’s “The Abolition of Man.” They say the frightening and inhuman future depicted by Lewis will materialize in the coming decades if Christians in particular fail to take up the responsibility as new “Noah’s” to be preachers of righteousness regarding the transhuman vision. Do you agree with this assessment? If so, how quickly do you imagine this irreversible path will begin (note that even some US government reports envision anytime following the year 2012 as the start of the human enhancement revolution).

# LESSON #13

## SUMMARY

For this week's study the class should have reviewed their most important notes from chapters 1-12 of *FORBIDDEN GATES* and highlighted what they believe to be the most important aspects of these issues for final summary discussion during lesson #13.

**TODAY'S VERSES:** Ephesians 3:10

**TODAY'S FOCUS:** In the letter to the church at Ephesus, Paul states the responsibility of the Church to make known the manifold wisdom of God to the world. "His intent was that now, through the church, the manifold wisdom of God should be made known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly realms" (Ephesians 3:10). This duty includes following Noah's example and offering a "counter theological discourse" reflective of the everlasting gospel of human redemption through the person of Jesus Christ (an antithesis to the salvation plan of transhumanism) while also addressing the difficult philosophical and ethical questions raised by modern technology and the portentous move by governments and powers to use biological sciences to remanufacture mankind.

**OPENING THOUGHT:**

Today's class will serve to reflect back over the material covered over the last 12 weeks concerning *FORBIDDEN GATES: How Genetics, Robotics, Artificial Intelligence, Synthetic Biology, Nanotechnology, And Human Enhancement Herald The Dawn Of Techno-Dimensional Spiritual Warfare* to prioritize as a class the most important elements of the subject matter as determined by the members of the study. This particular class may conclude by discussing the need for a local "battle plan" or follow-up response to what has been learned, and, based on the professional training, skill set, talents, and/or interests of the participants, what this particular group can do to publically engage or influence the debate while encouraging others outside this circle to do the same. For today's class, briefly state what each lesson covered then open the class for discussion using the commentary and input from class members collected over the last 12 weeks.

---

## LESSON #1: YOUR HIDDEN ENEMY

**VERSE:** Ephesians 6:11-13

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #1 was to establish the reality of evil supernaturalism and the role of the Church with regard to spiritual warfare.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** In the opening chapter of their book FORBIDDEN GATES, authors Tom and Nita Horn recite a story told them years ago by Dr. David Yonggi Cho. The story involved a “vision” of an agathodemon—an ancient spirit with the head of a man and body of a serpent—that Cho battled and overcame. Shortly after waking up from the dream, Cho found that the woman he had been praying for was healed and the miracle led to the community converting to Christianity. Today, Cho pastors the largest evangelical church in the world with nearly a million members. If you believe the vision was genuine and represented spiritual and material reality, it all started in a city delivered from demonic siege.

### DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:

1. In the opening chapter of FORBIDDEN GATES, authors Tom and Nita Horn recite a story told them years ago by Dr. David Yonggi Cho. What did you make of this story? Was it real or was Cho delusional?
2. Read the first theory concerning the origin of demons called “Spirits of a Pre-Adamic Race,” which makes the assumption that life existed on earth before Genesis 1:2 (the “gap” theory). Do you believe ancient history and the geological record support this conclusion? What evidence do you have?
3. The second theory for the origin of demons—Otherworld Creatures—suggests that earthly anomalies such as megaliths, pyramids, etc., indicate a “supernatural” intelligence visited the earth during antiquity. Some students of demonology characterize this evidence as “demonic intelligence.” What do you think of such conclusions?
4. Theory number three for the origin of demons—Offspring of Angels and Women—interprets Genesis 6:4 as a historical account of women

breeding with fallen angels and resulting in demonic offspring. Do you believe Matthew 22:30 disputes this possibility?

5. Theory number four pertaining to the origin of demons—Spirits of Wicked Men Deceased—is based on the popular idea that good humans become angels and evil humans become demons at death. In what ways does our culture support this notion? Do we tell our children that loved ones (mommy, siblings, etc.) become angels at death? Daddy is watching over us?
6. Theory number five on the origin of demons—Demons Are Fallen Angels—is widely accepted among Christians as the most likely and accurate explanation of the origin of demons. Do you believe it? Why?
7. The sixth theory regarding the origin of demons—Several of the Theories Above—is interesting in that it says it is a mistake to select only one theory for the origin of evil supernaturalism. Have you thought of this before, and do you think it has merit?
8. Theory number seven concerning the origin of demons—None of the Above—denies the literal existence of personal demons, labeling them as superstitious designations. Do you completely agree, partially agree, or disagree altogether?

---

## **LESSON #2: OPEN SESAME!**

**VERSE:** Matthew 16:18-19

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #2 was to establish the idea that spirits can be bound and loosed, invited and disinvited by human activity.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** In the first few paragraphs of chapter two from FORBIDDEN GATES, the story is told of famed occultist Aleister Crowley attempting to open a portal between the material and spiritual world. Following him, two of his disciples—Jack Parsons (founder of Jet Propulsion Laboratory) and L. Ron Hubbard (Church of



Scientology founder) attempted to reopen the portal in order to bring through a gibborim or demon child, the whore of Babalon (sic or magical variation of Babylon). All three men claimed success in their attempts to make contact with the spirit world. The rituals and claims beg the question: Did something truly supernatural actually happen or were the men lying to bolster their reputations as magicians.

#### **DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. Whether you believe the claims made by Crowley, Parsons and Hubbard referred to in the first few paragraphs of *Forbidden Gates*, Chapter Two are true, would you say the following concept is accurate: that spirits go where they are invited?
2. On pages 34-36 of *Forbidden Gates*, Tom and Nita Horn describe how amulets or talismans as magical items have been historically used to open and close (bind and loose) supernatural gateways. Does the use of such amulets (statues, candles, pendants, rings, etc) actually work? Is the use of such by certain Christian sects a good or dangerous idea?
3. In what way would you define the most appropriate Christian method of binding or loosening supernaturalism? Can one actually “bind” demons, and if so, in what way and when should this occur? How does one “loose” the power of God in their lives?
4. On pages 38-43 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors provide background on certain goddesses and rituals. Did such beliefs actually represent the manifestation of evil supernaturalism – literal spiritual forces against which the Church was opposed – or were these beliefs simply harmless mythology?
5. Under the subtitle “Deeper Truth about Underworld Deities” starting on page 43 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors discuss “Mother Earth” or inner-world goddesses. Many “New Age” types including Wiccans who consider themselves “white witches” or positive nature worshippers take issue with the idea that what they are doing is demonic. What are your thoughts on this issue?

6. On page 46 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors point out how, like ancient Greeks did, some Bible scholars believe the physical earth has “spirits” residing within it. This raises two interesting questions: 1) Are all of the spirits in the earth “bound” or can some of them move back and forth between dimensions? 2) Is Hell – one place spirits would not be able to arbitrarily depart – literally inside the earth? What are your thoughts on this?
  7. On page 52 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors publish a portion of an email they received from Dr. Michael Bennett on the use of theurgic or psychoactive drugs for the purposes of making contact with these underworld (or otherworldly) spirits via mind-altering. They also note how the ancient goddess Hecate was believed to control spirit-traversing gateways that could be opened by her into the human mind through the use of psychoactive drugs—a practice employed throughout Greek paganism as well as by shamans of other cultures but condemned in the Scriptures (Galatians 5:20; Revelation 9:21 and 18:23) as pharmakeia—the administering of drugs for sorcery or magical arts in connection with demonic contact. Do you believe such contact is possible using certain drugs, or is this quite literally “all in a person’s mind?”
  8. On pages 58-60 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors point out how, either intentionally or unintentionally, people can enter into a “deal with the devil” as a result of their collective will and imagination. Does this bring us back to the first question in this week’s study, that spirits go where they are invited? If so, what is the best course of action or lifestyle choice in your opinion with regard to making contact with supernatural entities?
- 

### **LESSON #3: SUCH BEAUTIFUL DECEPTION**

**VERSE:** 1 Timothy 4:1-2

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #3 was to establish the idea that paganism is entering the mainstream, threatening even to permanently alter contemporary concepts of Christian theology.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** The third chapter of Forbidden Gates opens with a shocking statement: “Over the past century, a generation of Christians and other religious persons have systematically challenged and then abandoned fundamental precepts of New Testament theology, giving birth to new forms of secularized spirituality fueled by human potential and an amorphous mixture of Buddhism, pantheistic Christianity, and occult traditions. Many of the most popular doctrines celebrated today cleverly conceal this ancient carnival of pagan mystical occultism by wrapping it in prosperity theology, self-help messages, goddess-centered environmental theology, and dominionism and the elevation of man. Instead of living by faith, as defined in Scriptures centered on the person of Jesus Christ and expressed through personal sacrifice and transformation, emergent church leaders allure congregants with seductive messages of thrilling material benefits that historically were shown to be keys to opening gateways to and forming pacts with Faustian forces.” Today we will examine this incredible statement and decide for ourselves whether such claim is true.

**DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. On page 61 of Forbidden Gates the author’s state that this generation is systematically challenging and then abandoning fundamental precepts of New Testament theology. Do you agree with this comment? If not, why? If so, why?
2. Besides the abandonment of Judeo-Christian values within contemporary society, the authors of Forbidden Gates also contend there has been a systematic unraveling of New Testament theology by institutionalized Christianity this century systematic with progressive adoption of pagan church activity. Have you witnessed such practices in your church or community similar to what is described by Samantha Smith on page 62 of Forbidden Gates?
3. On page 63 of Forbidden Gates, the authors tell an unusual story about a large Assemblies of God church where the intercessory prayer team was claiming to be possessed or controlled by demonic spirits during Sunday services. Later in the same chapter they describe youth camps where they witnessed Christian kids being trained by church leaders to build

labyrinth paths made of sticks and stones in the woods in mimicry of ancient paganism related to the mythology of Queen Pasiphae, an immortal daughter of the sun-god Helios, who, like her two siblings, Aetes and Kirke, possessed the powers of witchcraft (pharmakeia, discussed in last week's study), which was used every nine years (this part of the myth varies) to draw children into the wooded labyrinth of Minotaur as a sacrifice. Are such Christians playing with fire, inviting contact with demonic powers?

4. On pages 67-68, the authors of Forbidden Gates mention the god Apollo and discuss the role that the female prophetesses of the deity – the Pythians – played in ancient times. They also cite an ancient account of the accuracy of their prophecies. Is it conceivable that pagans under demonic influence could actually foresee the future or make accurate predictions at times? If so, how would this be possible?
5. On page 71 of Forbidden Gates, the authors point out how Pythian-like channelings, as well as other forms of divining have been revived in recent years. Were you aware of this and do you know people that use such things as Ouija boards or other devices for making spirit contact?
6. The authors of Forbidden Gates close chapter three pointing out a number of television shows today in which contact with “ghosts” and other spirits are actively sought. Electronic devices such as Electromagnetic Field (EMF) detectors are used by paranormal investigators on popular programs such as Ghost Hunters because it is believed that in attempting to communicate or manifest, spirits gather energy from their surroundings, a process they believe can be measured with EMF detectors. Have you (or do you) watched any of these programs and how did you feel about it? Did you think any of it was real?

---

## **LESSON #4: SATAN'S JURISDICTION**

**VERSE:** Mark 1:23-27

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #4 was to establish that Satan continues to hold influence over the world and that his jurisdiction is sometimes determined by human decisions/invitation.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** The fourth chapter of Forbidden Gates begins with an interesting story concerning theologian Robert Cornwall, a pastor and early mentor of the authors of the book. According to the account, a building that had been converted into a church had an occult history that seemed to connect it with evil supernaturalism, literally resident evil. What did you make of this story?

**DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. On page 77 of Forbidden Gates, the authors recite a story told by Dr. Robert Cornwall in the 1970s at Redwood Family Campmeeting in Northern California. Do you think this account actually happened, or was it simply a figment of an overactive imagination if not an outright lie?
2. The second issue raised by the Cornwall story has to do with “legal” rights, which Satan may possess over people and property. The authors claim that to this day the Devil maintains limited jurisdiction as the “god of this world” and can, essentially, enter into binding agreements with people and institutions creating a covenant relationship including specific rights. Do you agree or disagree with this premise?
3. In addition to individual property surrendered to Satanic dominion, the authors claim entire geographies can, through specific activity or judgments, come under control of evil supernaturalism, presumably through a majority or collective agreement within human populations that stands at odds with moral law. If you agree, in what way do you imagine this process works?

4. According to *Forbidden Gates* (and other works by Tom and Nita Horn), a partnership or contract can actually be entered into between human and non-human governments. This theology is based in part on the ancient “Divine Council” as well as Judaic and biblical literature concerning the “Kosmos” or domain where kosmokrators (rulers of darkness who work in and through human counterparts) command spirits of lesser rank until every level of human government is touched by this influence. It is this dominion, not flesh and blood that seeks a world system under Satan’s control (see Ephesians 6). Do you believe such spiritual influences operate within your state or nation? At the federal level?
  
  5. On page 82 of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors bring up the question of “inner space” as opposed to external physical reality concerning the “Quantum Gravity Treatment of the Angel Density Problem.” This is an ancient argument that asks “how many angels can fit on the head of a pin” and raises associated philosophical-metaphysical-physics issue of how many demons can possess an individual. When extrapolated to another question – how many demons can occupy a state or a nation – the figures become mind boggling and downright scary. Do you believe there are places on earth where, as a result of the density of fallen angels, darkness is “as thick as mud”? If so, what nations or areas of the world would you believe this has been evident historically or is true today, and in what way has it been manifested?
  
  6. In the last few pages of *Forbidden Gates*, the authors discuss the difference between the two Greek terms: 1) *daimonizomai*, meaning “to be demonized”; and 2) *echon daimonion*, which means “having a demon,” and can actually denote a person who possesses the demon, not the other way around (again, this concept can be expanded to cities, states and nations that pursue demonic aspiration). After having read this chapter in *Forbidden Gates*, have you or do you know a person that fits either of these categories? What are the symptoms?
-

## LESSON #5: DAIMONIONS INSIDE THE CHURCH

**VERSE:** 2 Chronicles 18:18-21

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #5 continued Demonology 101 by recognizing how even the organized church can be fertile ground for invasive spirits intent on sidelining effective ministry. As a result, we must be vigilant at all times.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter five of Forbidden Gates opens with an important insight not always discussed in books or studies on Spiritual Warfare. According to the authors, the SUPERIOR enemies the Church faces are not always those that come from without, but those from within institutionalize Christianity – what the authors call “demons of religion.” Did you find this idea to be disturbing, and do you agree? If so, in what ways do you believe these religious spirits manifest themselves within organized religion?

### DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:

1. The authors of Forbidden Gates held executive level positions in the largest evangelical institution in the world for decades, during which time they pastored and were also involved in exorcism (deliverance ministry). On pages 91-92 they state that the most powerful forms of demonism they encountered during that time did not, however, come from the few examples of authentic possession they witnessed, but rather from “demons of religion” manifest in some of those who held positions of authority inside the organization. What do you think of this troubling assertion?
2. From Scripture, the authors of Forbidden Gates (page 92) note how 1) a lying spirit filled the mouths of the prophets in the Old Testament; 2) in the New Testament Jesus confronted an unclean spirit in the synagogue; and 3) Jesus tied the power of Satan to leaders of the synagogue. Do you believe these biblical examples were isolated incidents or that they mirror how evil supernaturalism actively seeks entry into church life and ministry?

3. The authors of Forbidden Gates point out how some Catholic and Evangelical leaders have verbalized their knowledge of evil supernaturalism within their institutions. Some of those who were quite verbal met untimely deaths. Is it possible that a conspiracy exists among certain church leaders to cover up this diabolical reality? Or is this simply too “conspiracy minded” to believe that such solidarity actually exists among certain human and non-human church leadership?
  
  4. Chapter Five of Forbidden Gates includes a biting excerpt from an article by Tom Horn (New Testament Theology According To The Vampire Lestat) that speaks of the megalomania that is typical of many false church leaders. The language from this article emphasizes how such false persons attempt to suppress their true motivation by emulating sincerity. Have you ever seen an example of this?
  
  5. Given the fact that deceptive spirits actively seek to invest themselves in church activity and persons, the authors of Forbidden Gates emphasize the need for believers to be alert and to understand the difference between legitimate and illegitimate ministry activity. Write down the ways in which you believe this can be accomplished.
  
  6. On pages 104-105 of Forbidden Gates, the authors mention how “judgment must begin at the house of God” (1 Peter 4:17). In upcoming classes the issues of transhumanism and human enhancement (see the subtitle of Forbidden Gates) will illustrate the increasing need for spiritual discernment in the church concerning new doctrines related to human-transforming technology and the resulting ideological battle for the mind of a generation. As we approach this new paradigm, in what way will current tried-and-true methods of discernment continue to be valid?
- 

**LESSON #6: TEMPTATION, INFLUENCE, OBSESSION, DEMONIZATION,  
POSSESSION**



**VERSE:** Mark 3:23-24

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #6 was to establish the limits of what demons can and cannot do and the methods by which they seek entry into our minds and bodies.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter six of Forbidden Gates opens with one of the thorniest questions in Christianity: can a Christian be demon possessed? While the majority of evangelical Christians would shout a resounding “no,” there are a number of believers that argue otherwise. The authors of Forbidden Gates do not believe actual Christian possession is possible, but do you agree or disagree, and why. The answer to this difficult question can be helpful in understanding what the limits of evil supernaturalism are, as well as defining the tools they use to intrude themselves into a Christian’s life.

**DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. The authors of Forbidden Gates open the sixth chapter with a question about whether a born again believer can be demon possessed. They say a true Christian cannot. Do you agree or disagree?
2. Notwithstanding the question of possession, the authors of Forbidden Gates believe Christians certainly can become “demonized.” Write down your feelings about this process as outlined in Forbidden Gates.
3. The authors then describe the steps (temptation, influence, obsession, demonization, possession) that can lead to demonization of a Christian or possession of an unsaved person. Have you or somebody you know wrestled with or overcome any of the advanced stages of this process (for instance “obsession”)?
4. According to the authors of Forbidden Gates, the battle for control of these steps and doorways begins within the mind and moves outward toward physical fulfillment and ultimately through the stages from “temptation” to demonization or even possession. How frequently would

you say this battle within the mind occurs? Minute by minute, hour by hour, daily, or only occasionally?

5. In what at first seems almost out of place in this discussion, the authors on pages 111-115 bring up the subject of Sparagmos (“torn apart”) and Omophagia (“consumed raw”) related to Dionysian rituals by the Bacchae women. The subject offers obvious blasphemy of the concept of Holy Communion, but can you think of other ways the message of communion, the mind, and spiritual warfare may have deeper meaning than the authors took time to explain in Forbidden Gates?
  6. In the final section of chapter six, the authors of Forbidden Gates ask “So who’s in control of YOUR mind?” This question is followed by a statement of fact rarely defined inside church institutions – that PEOPLE sometimes are the problem, not just the spirits operating behind them. Do you see a conflict between this statement and Ephesians 6:12?
- 

## **LESSON #7: THE COMING BATTLE WILL BE MORE THAN COSMISTS vs. TERRANS**

**VERSES:** Genesis 6:12-13; Matthew 24:37

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #7 was to begin establishing how emerging fields of technology combined with transhumanist philosophy threatens to change what it means to be human and thus what believers understand about spiritual warfare.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter seven of Forbidden Gates represents the “turn in the curve” in this 13-week study. With the basic concepts of Spiritual Warfare learned over the past six weeks, the class should be ready to move into uncharted waters, which previous generations would not have dreamed the church would be facing. The startling yet potentially unstoppable ramifications represented by the information contained in the next seven weeks of classes may at first seem unbelievable. But as students review government documents, legitimate news reports, and even prophecy, the incredible vision of a posthuman world will come into view, providing believers with both the

challenge – and the answers – to what the authors of the study book call Techno-Dimensional Spiritual Warfare.

**DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. With chapter seven of *Forbidden Gates*, this study finally reaches the “turn in the curve” in that the subject of human-enhancement and transhumanism is finally raised. Before reading this book, were you familiar with these terms or the subject matter? If so, in what way?
2. Chapter two of *Forbidden Gates* opens with discussion of a coming war. This battle will not be limited to ideological issues, but potentially represents vast bloodshed. It sounds like a modern prediction of Armageddon, yet evolves from some of the very persons currently working toward a transhuman future. Does it surprise you that some scientists fear they are constructing the very tools that may destroy them and their progeny?
3. An interesting point is made in this seventh chapter of *Forbidden Gates* about how the “brilliantly insane” Theodore (Ted) Kaczynski (the Unabomber) predicted this very issue—that man would become dependent on machine intelligence, but by the time humans realized the real risk of artificial intelligence, it would be too late. Do you believe we are already seeing this kind of social dependence on machine intelligence and that it is too late to turn back? Have we already started down the slippery slope toward the “rise of the machines”?
4. After two decades and thousands of hours of research, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* believe Technological Singularity (in terms of strong artificial intelligence) is only a matter of time (should the world continue without divine interference). They also agree with experts like Ray Kurzweil and Hugo de Garis that we are at the bend of the knee in which technological progress is about to accelerate exponentially, leading to the

birth of synthetic intelligence. Do you agree or disagree with this assessment, and why?

5. How technological singularity will play a role in human-enhancement and transhumanism will be profound in that rapid problem-solving as a result of strong artificial intelligence will quickly lead to new innovations as well as improvements to current human-machine integration and biological alterations of the specie. As the reader will increasingly learn over the next seven weeks, government and academic groups are aware of the upcoming redefinition of humanity and have been quietly funding research that will be used for setting public policy around human enhancement as the next step in man’s evolution. For instance, what did you think when you learned on page 136 of *Forbidden Gates* that the National Institute of Health (NIH) had provided a \$773,000.00 grant to Case Law School in Cleveland, Ohio for developing the guidelines that will be used for setting public policy on human enhancement?
  
6. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* continue in chapter seven to describe the era that we are poised to enter as reminiscent of “The Island of Doctor Moreau,” but on steroids; in other words, the developing scenario may be much worse than H. G. Wells could have imagined in his worst nightmares, as it now appears that government think tanks and the military view a new arms race involving modified humans as potentially unavoidable. In upcoming classes we will look at more immediate issues that will arise in Christian homes as a result of human-enhancement. But how does learning of this situation cause you to react?

---

## **LESSON #8: THE HELL SCENARIO WILL BE NOTHING TO GRIN ABOUT**

**VERSES:** Col. 1:16; Romans 1:18-25

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #8 was to build on lesson #7’s introduction to emerging fields of technology and transhumanist philosophy—which is already moving beyond barriers put in place by God—to ask if man is threatening to open a “Pandora’s Box” to a

molecular biological nightmare, which could at a minimum result in negative health related issues, even plagues of biblical proportions, that will change spiritual warfare and potentially even result in fulfillment of prophecy.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter Eight of Forbidden Gates continues with an overview of some of the emerging fields of science and technology that, among other things, will play a role in changing the Christian’s responsibility regarding spiritual warfare. While each of the fields discussed today could “open gates” to dangerous side-effects such as new disease strains or negative environmental repercussions – it is their potential impact on the human condition – physical, mental, and spiritual – that concerns us most.

**DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. In the opening paragraphs of Forbidden Gates, chapter eight, Tom Horn describes a writer for Wired Magazine contacting him to ask if he would provide points of concern over creating transgenic animals (animals whose DNA is modified to include human or other animal or plant genes not native to their specie) for pharmaceutical research. According to the writer, Tom’s cautionary notes were first included then edited out of the article, “Pharm Animals Crank Out Drugs,” because the magazine preferred a mostly positive spin on the subject. Do you believe similar efforts are being made to intentionally censor or tailor this information, which the public might perceive as a threat to their physical, mental, and even spiritual health?
2. Some of the concerns, which the writers of Forbidden Gates believe members of the church and society in general need to be aware of includes genetically modified food, synthetic biology, germline engineering and other issues listed on pages 155-166. Of these, which did you find most disturbing, and why?
3. Under the subtitle “Heaven and Hell Scenarios,” the authors of Forbidden Gates point out how scientists, philosophers, and bioethicists are coming down on one side or another, believing the genetics revolution and

human enhancement herald the dawn of either a utopian age or a dystopian hell. If you had to pick, what would your guess be concerning the ultimate outcome of the grand experiment man has set course on regarding transhumanism and the genetics revolution? In what way can you imagine this becoming a HELL SCENARIO?

4. In what way could you imagine (at least as a mental experiment) emerging technology and human enhancement leading to a HEAVEN SCENARIO?
5. What do you make of the fact that several of the government experts and reports cited in Forbidden Gates see these Heaven/Hell scenarios (which ever it will be) as risky but unavoidable, even the dawn of a new arms race?
6. Some of the government reports and experts cited in Forbidden Gates point to the year 2012 as the dawn of a “human enhancement revolution.” Do you find this year curious, given how many ancient cultures such as the Mayan’s viewed this date as a moment in time when mankind would be transformed into a higher state of being?

---

## **LESSON #9: THE SPIRIT BEHIND TRANSHUMANISM**

**VERSES:** Genesis 6:1-4; Matthew 24:37

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #9 was to draw parallels between the story of ancient Watchers (fallen angels) and the aim of transhumanism toward genetically altering creation, both man and beast. The question is: are we witnessing a repeat of something that was done once before, and is this fulfillment of prophecy, i.e. “as it was in the days of Noah.”

**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter nine of Forbidden Gates opens with the assessment made by celebrated English theologian George Hawkins Pember (1837-1910) in his book

Earth's Earliest Ages that, based on the words of Jesus in Matthew chapter 24, the end of time would see a return to earth either in physical form or in spirit the "beings" that had unlawfully joined themselves to humanity through "corrupting" human and animal "flesh" (DNA) in fashioning a body into which they could extend themselves.

#### **DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. The ninth chapter of Forbidden Gates opens with discussion of "the Watchers" and their offspring, the Nephilim or giants of the Old Testament. How familiar are you with this history and the numerous ancient texts surrounding these legendary beings?
2. On page 179 of Forbidden Gates, the authors discuss how the story of giants appearing on earth as a result of "gods" (fallen angels) intermingling with humans and animals is retold in the history of every major civilization of the ancient world. Have you considered that these "myths" from cultures such as Egypt and Greece may have been a crude reference to their knowledge of an earlier time when so-called gods and demigods or "heroes" actually walked the earth, giving birth to giants?
3. In addition to giants, the authors of Forbidden Gates discuss how these "demigods" were accompanied in ancient texts and idol representations by half-animal half-human creatures such as centaurs, chimeras, furies, satyrs and other genetic aberrations. Can such records be looked upon as rough documentation of a line that was once crossed via genetic engineering, resulting in God's judgment and the Great Flood?
4. If the authors of Forbidden Gates are correct in their concern that modern science may be repeating what the Watchers did in crossing over the species barrier, would you agree that we may be witnessing the fulfillment of biblical prophecy, especially in regard to Matthew 24:37 "as it was in the days of Noah"? Does this mean we could see the return of mythological beings?

5. In addition to verses from the Bible and Apocrypha texts predicting a return of transhuman “Watcher science” at the end times, on page 192 of Forbidden Gates under the subtitle “Biblical Example of Nephilim Resurrection,” the authors mention the research from their book Apollyon Rising 2012 concerning Nimrod, the original character who later was mythologized as the god Apollo prophesied by the apostle Paul in the New Testament and by the occult elite on the Great Seal of the United States as the ancient spirit that will return to earth to rule the novus ordo seclorum. Were you aware that the prophecy on the Great Seal, which came from the Sibyl of Apollo, predicts that Apollo / Nimrod will return when he receives “the life of gods, and sees Heroes with gods commingling?” A pagan savior born of “a new breed of men sent down from heaven” when “heroes” and “gods” are blended together? This sounds eerily similar to what the Watchers did during the creation of nephilim and to what scientists are doing this century through genetic engineering of human-animal chimeras. Thus there are ancient records, scriptures and even government seals that predict a revival of what the Watchers did, set for end times.
  
6. Would you agree with the authors of Forbidden Gates that even if modern genetic sciences are not repeating the sins of the Watchers, by crossing over species barriers and creating unnatural forms of life – from synthetic microorganisms to transgenic animals and genetically modified foods – significant danger is raised?

---

## **LESSON #10: THE TRANSHUMAN NEW FACE OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE**

**VERSES:** 2 Corinthians 10:4-5; Isaiah 26:3

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #10 was to discuss how emerging technology represents a new battlefield regarding the mind and gives rise to the need for fresh understanding of “shielding” our minds from secular and intangible influences.



**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter ten of *Forbidden Gates* opens by quoting a New York Times article on the nonprofit organization, the Lifeboat Foundation whose mission is to imagine previously unknown threat scenarios arising as a result of new technologies, against which “shields” will need to be devised to protect mankind. Though operated by transhumanists, in its own way, the Lifeboat Foundation can be viewed as giving a clarion call similar to that made in the study book, *Forbidden Gates*; i.e. the need to recognize that creation-altering sciences and genetic engineering of new or altered life forms represents a different kind of danger than previous generations faced.

**DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. The tenth chapter of *Forbidden Gates* begins by quoting a New York Times article about the nonprofit nongovernmental organization, The Lifeboat Foundation, whose mission is to encourage “scientific advancements while helping humanity survive existential risks and possible misuse of increasingly powerful technologies, including genetic engineering, nanotechnology, and robotics/AI, as we move towards the Singularity.” Were you aware of this foundation and what do you make of their ambitious plans?
2. On page 203, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* say “futurist think tanks such as the Lifeboat Foundation understand that the phrase, ‘those who fail to learn from history are doomed to repeat it’ is axiomatic for a reason. Human nature has a clear track record of developing defense mechanisms only after natural or manufactured threats have led to catastrophe. We humans seem doomed to learn from our mistakes far more often than from prevention.” Why do you think this is true, and what does this suggest for our future, given the unprecedented threats posed by the emerging fields of technology you have been studying?
3. The difference between the threats previous generations faced (nuclear arms for instance) and what mankind faces today is clearly understood by most secular researchers including transhumanists regarding how the emerging threats are “alive” and can self-multiply – as in living biological weapons or godlike artificial intelligence soon to arrive via technological

singularity. But where most of the government reports, academic materials, and think tanks fail is in lacking to appreciate that man is not just a series of biological functions. We are spirit and soul and vulnerable to spiritual, not just environmental, issues. Thus the “shields” that the Lifeboat Foundation are working to create could only protect us so far. We will need spiritual shields too as GRIN raises those bigger issues of how human-transforming enhancements may alter man’s very soul (says Joel Garreau) as well as raise hundreds of immediate new challenges that Christians, families, and ministries are unprepared for. Write down 5 ways in which you can imagine creation-altering science (including human enhancement) affecting the spiritual nature of your home and community.

4. Despite these significant ethical and social dangers, industry and government interest in the technological dream of posthumanism, as documented in the book *Forbidden Gates*, is more than laissez-faire. The steady migration toward the fulfillment of biologically and cybernetically modified humans combined with corporate and national investments will predictably fuse this century, ultimately leading to strong cultural forces compelling all individuals to get “plugged in” to the grid. Whoever resists will be left behind as inferior Luddites (those who oppose new technology), or worse, considered enemies of the collectives’ progress regardless of personal or religious views. Nowhere will the struggle to resist this human biological alteration and machine integration be more immediate, say the authors, than in those religious homes where transhumanism is seen as an assault on God’s creative genius, and where, as a result, people of faith seek to maintain their humanity. This conflict may emerge as much from inside these homes and families as it will from external social influences. For instance, how did you feel when reading the very down-to-earth example of the high-school girl named “Michelle” on pages 210-213?
5. Following the example of “Michelle,” the authors of *Forbidden Gates* return to the deeper question of how these coming challenges will actually change “spiritual warfare” (not just due to emerging and exotic “issues” related to new technology – but by literally changing what it

means to be human, including cybernetic enhancement similar to the BORG (cy-borg) of Star Trek fame). In what ways can you imagine having your brain altered and wirelessly connected to communication systems (being developed now) as being physically and spiritually dangerous?

6. Following the material by Sue Bradley in chapter ten of Forbidden Gates, in which the ear-gates and mind-gates are discussed in relation to supernatural influences and mental as well as spiritual warfare, the authors conclude with examples of how gamers are having their dream experiences altered and learning to become the aggressor instead of the victim. This in turn is followed by discussion of science advances in mind and thought control, inception, even the question of free will. Where do YOU think all of this is headed?

---

## **LESSON #11: WILL YOU G.R.I.N. FOR THE MARK OF THE BEAST?**

**VERSES:** Revelation 13: 16-18

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #11 was to establish how emerging technology combined with transhumanist aspiration is leading toward a global identification system some imagine will become the “mark of the beast.”

**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter eleven of Forbidden Gates opens with several quotes from prominent individuals concerning implantable Radio Frequency Identification or RFID chips. This technology can be used to track items at a distance and many of the world's largest retailing and manufacturing companies now employ these tiny "spy chips" for remotely tracking inventory and personnel. Tech futurists envision that, as the human enhancement revolution takes off, steady migration of new and improved versions of implantable chips technology will be widely adapted inside evolving transhumans; a progressive integration of man with machine until finally, in the not too distant future, humans are cybernetically enhanced, computer adaptable, globally positioned, and constantly tracked and monitored using GPS-like navigation systems similar to what are routinely used in cars and cell phones today.

**DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. Chapter eleven of Forbidden Gates deals almost exclusively with trends in technology toward human-machine integration – the “borgification” of man – and implantable mechanisms. Do you believe the biblical “mark of the beast” could someday be a version of implantable smart-chip technology or another form of human-machine assimilation?
  
2. On pages 238-242, the authors of Forbidden Gates provide a stream beginning in 1973, showing consistent progress in the adoption of microchip tracking technology and the desire by governments and corporations to use this technology for human identification and tracking. Circle the top 5 points in this list, which you think would be important for class discussion.
  
3. On pages 244-245, the authors of Forbidden Gates discuss the idea that the actual mark of the beast could be an advanced hybrid version of RFID – a vaccine or implantable biochip that has the power to rewrite human DNA by combining human and animal genetics, thus the mark of the “beast.” What did you make of this theory?
  
4. On pages 245-251, material from Sharon Gilbert (whose formal education includes molecular biology) makes numerous disturbing points concerning how genetic sciences could actually create an implantable bio-chip that would have the power to rewrite human DNA in fulfillment of Nita Horn’s “mark of the beast” theory. Highlight parts from Sharon’s comments and write out thoughts on areas you believe would be important for class discussion.
  
5. On pages 251-257, the authors of Forbidden Gates raise the issue of transhumanism as a replacement theology, a new form of religion. Many transhumanists would decry this depiction, but what do you believe based on what you know of this rapidly growing cultural movement?

6. The authors conclude the eleventh chapter of Forbidden Gates making the bold statement that a growing number of people believe mankind will either adapt and be assimilated to posthuman, or be replaced by Nephilim 2.0 and the revival of their ancient mystery religion. Do you agree? And does this argue the need for Christian participation in public dialogue over this issue while there is time?
- 

## **LESSON #12: THOSE “OTHER” SIGNS OF THE DAYS OF NOAH**

**VERSES:** 1 Samuel 17: 20-27; Numbers 13:26-30

**FOCUS:** The goal of lesson #12 was to establish how the members of the mystical body of Christ (the true Church) remain the only power on earth against which the spirit of the Nephilim (including that part of modern transhumanism that seeks to cross species barriers) cannot stand. If the reappearance of Nephilim on earth – either physically or spiritually – is happening in fulfillment of Matthew 24:37 “as it was in the days of Noah,” this is only part of the story. The days of Noah had other “signs” too, ones that point to the overcoming power of God as an operative principle through His covenant people.

**OPENING THOUGHT:** Chapter twelve of Forbidden Gates will be used to focus on the “other” signs of the days of Noah, which lay out an image of God’s covenant people as the single agent on earth capable of overcoming the ancient and evil supernaturalism operating within the ancient/modern transhuman dream of synthetically altering and genetically reengineering creation (as was first attempted before the Great Flood by powerful fallen angels known as Watchers).

### **DISCUSSION QUESTIONS:**

1. On page 260 of Forbidden Gates, the authors write “But if indeed Satan has initiated an extraordinary conspiracy to revive species-altering supernaturalism as existed in Noah’s day, and assuming there is a gap between that sign and when God removes His own from this planet, the church as the body of Christ and God’s representation on earth could play a unique role as the instrument through which the Almighty, on

behalf of His creation, engages this evil.” If we can “assume” there is a gap of time between the start of the human-enhancement revolution and the removal of the Church from this planet, how much time do YOU believe the Church has to engage the transhumanist debate?

2. On pages 261-263, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* illustrate how persons of all ages – from youth to seniors – can be effective champions against the spiritual forces operating behind transhumanism. Does this encourage you to know that a single person of faith could experience the power of God operating through them in this way?
3. The authors of *Forbidden Gates* then discuss how “Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord.” This too was a sign of the “days of Noah” that could be part of the prophecy contained in Matthew 24:37 regarding the “days of Noah.” This fact could be especially meaningful in protecting believers in an age where genetic engineering, synthetic biology, and human enhancement pose mutagenic threats no generation since Noah’s day has been exposed to. Do you believe supernatural “grace” could protect God’s people in such an age? Against genetically modified foods? GE threats that impact the open environment? New disease strains that emerge as a result of crossing species barriers?
4. At the opening of Chapter Twelve in *Forbidden Gates* and again on page 265, the authors quote Brent Waters in saying “If Christians are to help shape contemporary culture—particularly in a setting in which I fear the posthuman message will prove attractive, if not seductive—then they must offer an alternative and compelling vision; a counter theological discourse so to speak.” This modern call to become Noah-like preachers of righteousness is a challenge the authors of *Forbidden Gates* believe the church can win if it takes up this task and becomes involved in the public debate. Do you agree, and if so, why?

5. According to the authors of *Forbidden Gates*, part of the discussion that modern “Noah’s” need to engage in their churches, home groups, and public and social settings includes issues contained in the limited set of instructions on bioethics dealing with in vitro fertilization and stem cell research, which was published by the Vatican in 2008 under the title “Dignitas Personae” or “the Dignity of the Person.” The authors also mention the 2004 “Occasional Paper No. 58” published by the Lausanne Committee for World Evangelism that briefly describes how “bioethics” could be used as a tool for evangelism. While the authors recognize these statements as containing important elements, a wider public and academic discussion is paramount, which would extend to questions of human-enhancement, policy implications, issues of fairness, access, equity, anticipated societal disruptions, military applications and more. Over the course of these weeks of study, have you imagined other aspects of the needed public debate not included in the book *Forbidden Gates*? If so, what are they?
  
6. On pages 269-270, the authors of *Forbidden Gates* quote from C. S. Lewis’s “The Abolition of Man.” They say the frightening and inhuman future depicted by Lewis will materialize in the coming decades if Christians in particular fail to take up the responsibility as new “Noah’s” to be preachers of righteousness regarding the transhuman vision. Do you agree with this assessment? If so, how quickly do you imagine this irreversible path will begin (note that even some US government reports envision anytime following the year 2012 as the start of the human enhancement revolution).